



ANSWERS (CLASS - 1 / SEMESTER - I)

Now Easy English

Chapter-1: Mary had a Little Lamb

Reading

1. False; 2. True; 3. False; 4. True; 5. True

Vocabulary

Dog – Puppy; Cow – Calf; Donkey – Foal;
Horse – Colt; Goose – Gosling

Grammar

1. bench, hut, boy, sun, crow, grass, tree;
2. a. school; b. Minu, cap; c. cat, wool;
d. father, fire-fighter; e. house

Writing

1. cat; 2. dog; 3. pen; 4. tin; 5. ball; 6. bird;
7. deer; 8. girl

Listening

Sky – blue; grass – green; rose – red;
sun – yellow; milk – white; mud – brown

Chapter-2: Day out at the Zoo

Reading

1. To the zoo; 2. Peacock; 3. Water and food;
4. Bananas and peanuts

Vocabulary

sheep – baa baa; cow – moo moo; pig – oink
oink; duck – quack quack; cat – meow meow;
dog – woof woof

Grammar

1. A; 2. An; 3. An; 4. An; 5. A; 6. An

Writing

fly; talks; eats; chilli; nuts; free; tree; tree;
fruits; happy

Listening

a. 5; b. 3; c. 10; d. 20; e. 9

Chapter-3: Back from the Grocer's

Reading

1. cabbage, cauliflower, tomatoes, brinjals,
capsicums, pumpkins
2. his mother was sick
3. all apples fell on road
4. busy road
5. hugged his mother

6. everyone helped him

Grammar

2. is; 3. are; 4. is; 5. is; 6. am; 7. am

Writing

Fox-box; toy-boy; pot-hot; far-car; found-
bound; pay-day; cold-old; carrot-parrot

Listening

Amina – painting; Zinia – playing with her dog;
Ravi – playing football; Lisa – sleeping; Jenny
– doing homework

Chapter-4: A Family Christmas

Reading

4-3-2-1-5

Vocabulary

Accept all reasonable answers

Grammar

teacher – teachers; slice - slices:
egg – eggs; coat – coats; shirt – shirts; station –
stations; train – trains; book – books; umbrella –
umbrellas; park – parks; computer – computers

Writing

1. sliding; 2. skipping; 3. upside; 4. playing;
5. running

Chapter-5: The Goose that Laid Golden Eggs

Reading

1. Goose; 2. Golden; 3. Greedy

Vocabulary

1. Egg 2. Man 3. Poor 4. Goose 5. Golden
6. Greedy

Grammar

1. Mumbai is a busy city.
2. Gopal, Reena and Meena are playing in the
garden.
3. Paul's neighbours were very happy.
4. His brother's friends went to play.
5. Sam always bought his brother
chocolate cakes.

Writing

1. is; 2. are; 3. are; 4. are; 5. is

Listening

2-4-1-3



Grammar

Unit -1 : Nouns... People / Places / Things

People

boy ; girl ; teacher; doctor; king; baby

Animals

dog ; snake ; lion; monkey; elephant; rabbit

Things

chocolate; clock ; telephone; doll; piano;guitar

Places

park;hospital;kitchen;playground;school;house

Cities

Hyderabad;Agra;Paris;Amritsar;New Delhi;

New York

Exercises

- A. 1. school 2. train 3. chocolate 4. bicycle
5. telephone 6. mother
B. a. piano b. dog c. monkey d. rabbit e. king
C. a. mother, king b. lion, monkey
c. school, kitchen d. chocolate, train

Unit -2 : Articles ... a / an / the

Exercises

- A. 1. a, a 2. an, a 3. the, the 4. a, a
B. 2. an octopus 3. a violin 4. an umbrella
C. 1.a 2.a 3.an 4.the 5.the 6.an 7.a 8.an
D. 1. a 2. an 3. a 4. the

Unit -3 : Plural Nouns ... -s/ -es / -ves

Exercises

- A. 1. boxes 2. potatoes 3. leaves 4. dresses
5. sandwiches 6. elephants 7. nurses
B. 3. These are foxes.
4. Those are pencils
5. Those are vans.
6. These are umbrellas.
C. 2. houses 3. foxes 4. monkeys 5. tomatoes
6. guitars 7. tables 8. leaves 9. books
D. 2. computers 3. robots 4. elephants
5. watches 6. brushes 7. aeroplanes
8. oranges 9. telephones 10. houses

Unit -4 : Be ... am/ is / are

Exercises

- A. 2. is 3. are 4. is 5. Are, am 6. Is, is

- B. 2. They are shoes.
3. She is a teacher.
4. We are baseball players.
5. You are a police.
6. I am a taxi driver.
C. 2. It 3. They 4. I, You 5. He 6. We
D. 2. he isn't, He is 3. she, she isn't, is playing
4. isn't, he is 5. Is, It isn't, is

Explore Math

Chapter-1: Exercise 1

- A. 2. Fifty-seven 3. Twenty-six
4. 38 5. Forty-nine
6. 65 7. Seventy-two
8. Eighty-one 9.92 10. Thirty-three

Exercise 2

- A.1. 8, 14, 26 2. 13, 38, 45 3. 25, 39, 44
4. 15, 21, 45 5. 18, 24, 29 6. 1, 5, 7
7. 12, 23, 65

Exercise 3

- A.1. 57, 23, 14 2. 71, 44, 13 3. 44, 39, 25
4. 32, 21, 15 5. 45, 29, 18 6. 48, 27, 16
7. 31, 27, 22

Exercise 4

- A. 2. 4 3. 6 4. 5 5. 3
B. 2. 6 – Even 3. 9 – Odd 4. 4 – Even
5. 3 – Odd 6. 7 – Odd 7. 6 – Even

Chapter-2:

Exercise 2

- A. 2. Yes 3. Yes 4. No
5. No 6. Yes 7. Yes

Exercise 3

- A. 9 B. 6
C. 1. 13 2. 26 3. 11 4. 17 5. 10

Exercise 4

- A. 1. 4 2. 8 3. 34 4. 27 5. 15

Exercise 5

- A. 2. < 3. < 4. > 5. >

Exercise 6

- C. 1. 1, 4, 6, 9 2. 2, 7, 8, 10
D. 1. 19, 16, 14, 13

Exercise 8

- A. 2. 1 ten 4 ones 3.1 ten 7 ones



4. 1 ten 6 ones 5. 1 ten 9 ones

Exercise 9

- A.** 2. 6 tens 1 one 3. 3 tens 8 ones
4. 2 tens 7 ones 5. 7 tens 3 ones
B. 2. 9 3. 7 4. 2 5. 5 6. 6

Chapter-3:

Exercise 2

- A.** 2. 7 3. 6 4. 6 5. 9 6. 9

Exercise 3

- A.** 1. 58 2. 86 3. 82 4. 27 5. 47

Exercise 4

- A.** 1. 2 2. 0 3. 4 4. 0 5. 8

Exercise 5

- A.** 1. 9 2. 9 3. 7 4. 7 5. 7

Exercise 6

- A.** 1. 7 dresses 2. 8 balloons
3. 9 umbrellas 4. 9 bangles 5. 5 toys

Chapter-4 :

Exercise 1

- A.** 1. 2 matchsticks 2. 4 flags 3. 3 kids
4. 2 bottles 5. 2 sweets 6. 1 soap

Exercise 2

- A.** 2. 23 3. 71 4. 63 5. 45

Exercise 3

- A.** 2. 4 3. 6 4. 2 5. 1

Exercise 4

- A.** 1. 5 2. 5 3. 1 4. 3 5. 3

Exercise 5

- A.** 1. 13 2. 11 3. 21 4. 12 5. 12

Exercise 6

- A.** 1. 0 2. 15 3. 7 4. 6 5. 0 6. 12

Exercise 7

- A.** 1. 6, 9, 6, 9 2. 8, 5, 5, 8 3. 7, 6, 1, 6
4. 9, 4, 5, 1 5. 6, 8, 6, 2

Chapter-5 :

Exercise 1

- A.** 2. 5 3. 10 4. 3 5. 11 6. 9
7. 10

Exercise 2

A.

	Numbers in figures	Tens	Ones	Numbers in words
1.	56	5	6	Fifty-six
2.	21	2	1	Twenty-one
3.	75	7	5	Seventy-five
4.	90	9	0	Ninety
5.	84	8	4	Eighty-four

- B.** 1. 20 2. 50 3. 30 4. 60
5. 30 6. 90

Chapter-6 : Exercise 1

- A.** 6, 10, 12, 18 **B.** 9, 15, 18
C. 12, 16 **D.** 10, 20

Exercise 2

- A.** 1. 9 2. 12 3. 30 4. 6 5. 8
B. 1. 6 2. 6 3. 20 4. 10 5. 12

Exercise 3

- A.** 1. 12 people 2. 21 chocolates
3. 15 children 4. 20 books
5. 12 roses 6. 14 passengers
7. 16 ribbons

Exercise 4

- A.** 1. 0 2. 0 3. 0 4. 0 5. 0 6. 0
7. 0, 0

Exploring Science

Chapter-1:

- A.** 1. Things which have life are living things.
Ex.1. Birds, 2. Animals.
2. Things which do not have life are non-living things. **Ex.** 1. Car, 2. Computer
3. The Sun, Water. 4. Pencil, Rubber.
B. 1. Living things 2. Natural things
C. 1. two 2. nature 3. non-living
D. 1. iii, iv 2. ii **E.** 1. (x) 2. (✓) 3. (✓)

Think it Over (HOTS)

1. The Money plant climbs over the higher point with the help of the thread.
2. The Lotus

Chapter-2:

- A.** 1. Big and small trees are called as plants.
Ex. Neem, Banyan.



2. The plants which creep on ground, grow and spread on ground are creepers.

Ex. Cucumber, Watermelon.

3. The plants that grow in water are called aquatic plants. **Ex.** Lotus and water lily.

- B.** 1. Herbs are small and weak plants with thin stems.
2. Some plants have sharp thorns. They are thorny plants.
3. Because they have delicate and thin stems.
- C.** 1. big 2. ground 3. small and weak
4. support 5. shrubs
- D.** 1.(iii) 2. (i) 3. (i)
- E.** 1.(✓) 2. (✗) 3. (✓) 4. (✗) 5. (✓)

Think it Over (HOTS)

1. We can't get air, rains, fruit, flowers, vegetables etc.
2. Cactus does not need much water to grow.

Chapter-3:

- A.** 1. The process of a plant grows up from a seed from the soil is called as germination of a seed.
2. Root, stem, leaf, flower and fruit.
3. Roots help the plant for absorbing water available in the soil.
4. Stem helps the plant to stand erect and transporting water and food to different parts of the plant.
- B.** 1. In the presence of sunlight.
2. Coriander and cabbage 3. Cactus
- C.** 1. Walnut 2. seed 3. Flower 4. stem
5. Root
- D.** 1.(iv) 2. (ii) 3. (ii) 4. (i) 5. (ii)
- E.** 1.(✓) 2. (✗) 3. (✓) 4. (✗) 5. (✗)
- F.** 1. Turnip, Radish 2. Sugarcrane, Potato
3. Cabbage, Coriander

Think it Over (HOTS)

As the roots grow at the point where the leaf starts it is helpful to the plant in absorbing the water in the soil speedily and completely.

Chapter-4:

- A.** 1. Wheat, Rice, Maize, Peas and Beans.
2. Cardamom, clove, Black-pepper, Cumin

seeds and Turmeric.

3. Carrot, Aram, Turnip
4. Cocoa beans provide coffee.
5. Groundnut plant, coconut plant, sunflower plant.
6. Mint, neem, amla.
- B.** 1. Mustard plant 2. Tea plant 3. Ginger
4. Cauliflower
- C.** 1. Amla 2. Vegetables 3. grains
- D.** 1.(iii) 2. (ii) 3. (iii)
- E.** 1.(✓), 2. (✗) 3. (✗)
- F.** 1.(iv) 2. (i) 3. (v) 4. (iii) 5. (ii)

Think it Over (HOTS)

1. Though brinjal is a fruit we can have it only cooked. So we treat it as vegetable.
2. Tomato, carrot, onion, beet-root, keera-cucumber.

Chapter-5:

- A.** 1. Camel, Cow, Buffalo
2. By using wings.
3. Animals that live in forests are wild animals.
- B.** 1. Shark 2. Ox 3. Cuckoo
- C.** 1.(✗), 2. (✓) 3. (✗) 4. (✗) 5. (✗)
6. (✓) 7. (✗)
- D.** 1.(iii) 2. (iii) 3. (iii)
- E.** i). 1. Alligator 2. Turtle
ii) 1. Dog 2. Cat iii) 1. Elephant 2. Tiger
- F.** 1.(iv) 2. (i) 3. (v) 4. (iii) 5. (ii)

Think it Over (HOTS)

1. Wild Animal 2. Tiger

Chapter-6:

- A.** 1. Lizards live on walls and roofs.
2. In sty. 3. In stable.
4. Fruits and Nuts.
5. Cock, buffalo, Ox and Camel are Herbivores.
6. Cock, buffalo and ox are plant eating animals.
7. Animals like mouse, cock and birds like pigeon and sparrow eat grains.
8. Leopard, Tiger and Hyena.
- B.** 1. Carnivores 2. Den 3. Web 3. Sty
- C.** 1.(✓) 2. (✗) 3. (✗) 4. (✗) 5. (✓)



- D.** 1. None of these 2. ii 3. iv 4. iii
F. 1. (v) 2. (iii) 3. (i) 4. (ii) 5. (iv)

Think it Over (HOTS)

1. Python 2. Lizard

Chapter-7:

- A.** 1. Oxygen, Carbon-di-oxide
 2. Smoke coming out of cars pollute the air.
 3. To breathe oxygen in the air and grow.
B. 1. Wind 2. Storm 3. As we need air for breathing.
C. 1. Polluted 2. Wind 3. dirty
D. 1. (✓) 2. (✓) 3. (X)
E. 1. C 2. d 3. b **F.** 1. ii 2. iii 3. iv 4. i

Think it Over (HOTS)

1. Stale air consists of smoke, carbon-di-oxide which is harmful; to health if breathe. Blowing air is fresh. 2. We see it.

Social Studies

Chapter-1:

- A.** 1. My name is
 2. I wear an identity card with my school uniform.
 3. We wear identity card because it depicts important things about us.
 4. My favourite hobby is watching cartoons.
 5. My birthday falls on when I was born.

B.

Things	Favourites
Colour	Yellow
Fruit	Grapes
Flower	Rose
Food	Curd rice

- C.** 1. F 2. T 3. T 4. F

D.



Tom & Jerry



Chhota Bheem

Chapter-2:

- A.** 1. Parents live together with their one or two children is known as a small family or a nuclear family.

2. Our father's and mother's parents are called grand parents.
 3. Grand parents, parents, children, uncles aunts and their children live together is known as a big family or a Joint family.
 4. A Joint family means Grand parents, parents, children, uncles aunts and their children live together. A small family means parents live together with their one or two children.

- B.** 1. nuclear 2. grand father 3. Siblings 4. grand mother
C. 1. F 2. T 3. T 4. T
D. 1. c 2. a 3. b 4. d

Chapter-3:

- A.** 1. We need a house to protect us from heat, cold, wind and rain.
 2. Kachcha houses are made of mud, straw, bamboo and leaves.
 3. Pucca houses mainly found in towns, cities and even in villages.
 4. Eskimos are residents of north pole. They live in Igloos.
B. 1. protects 2. kachcha 3. igloos 4. floating
C. a. ii b. i c. iv d. iii **D.** 1. b 2. d 3. a

Chapter-4:

- A.** 1. People who live near our houses are called neighbours.
 2. We should behave well with our neighbours.
 3. The society near our house is called neighbourhood.
 4. Post office, school, park and bank.
B. 1. neighbourhood 2. places 3. clean and safe 4. behave
C. 1. F 2. F 3. T 4. F
D. 1. d 2. c 3. a 4. b
E. 1. b 2. c 3. a 4. a

Chapter-5:

- A.** 1. People who help us are called our helpers.
 2. A cobbler helps us by mending our shoes.
 3. A chemist sells medicines for us.
 4. A tailor stitches clothes for us.
 5. We should behave well and talk politely with them.
B. 1. helpers 2. manson 3. Clothes 4. chemist

C. 1. iii 2. iv 3. i 4. ii

D. 1. c 2. b 3. a 4. c

Chapter-6:

A. 1. We celebrate Diwali by decorating homes and shops with lamps and lights, burning crackers and sparklers and exchanging sweets and gifts each other.

2. Christmas is celebrated world wide on 25th December every year because it marks the birthday of Jesus Christ.

3. Eid is celebrated after thirty days of fasting in the month of 'Ramzan'.

4. We celebrate Gurupurab by decorating houses and gurudwaras with lights.

B. 1. Dussehra 2. Sikhs 3. Muslims 4. Jesus Christ

C. 1. F 2. F 3. T 4. F

D. 1. b 2. b 3. a 4. a

Chapter-7:

A. 1. Independence Day, Republic Day and Gandhi Jayanthi.

2. The Prime Minister of India hoists the National Flag at Red Fort in Delhi and addresses the nation on Independence Day.

3. We celebrate Republic Day because our country became a democratic republic on this day in 1950.

4. Gandhiji is called as 'Father of the Nation' because he led the fight against the british for the Independence of India.

B. 1. T 2. T 3. F 4. T

C. 1. ii 2. iv 3. i 4. iii

D. 1. b 2. a 3. a 4. d

General Knowledge

Chapter-1:

a. 1. CAMEL 2. BEAR 3. CAT
4. DUCK 5. HORSE 6. GOAT
7. FOX 8. TIGER 9. WOLF
10. ZEBRA 11. LION 12. KANGAROO

b. 1. Camel 2. Horse 3. Zebra
4. Lion 5. Elephant 6. Rhinoceros
7. Kangaroo 8. Bear 9. Tiger

c. 1. Cat 2. Dog 3. Cow

4. Hen 5. Goat 6. Sheep

7. Horse 8. Duck

d. 1. Cow 2. Lioness 3. Goose

4. Hen 5. Mare 6. Ewe

7. Tigress 8. Doe

e. 1. Barks 2. Buzzes 3. Croaks

4. Trumpets 5. Roars 6. Brays

7. Bleats 8. Hisses 9. Mews

f. 1. Cat - Fish 2. Snake - Frog

3. Rabbit - Carrot 4. Tiger - Deer

5. Elephant - Sugarcane

g. 1. Pigeon 2. Crow 3. Duck

4. Eagle 5. Penguin 6. Sparrow

7. Crane 8. Owl 9. Humming Bird

h. 1. water 2. den 3. tree

4. stable 5. nest 6. kennel

7. burrow 8. beehive 9. shed

i. 1. Mosquito 2. Butterfly 3. Honeybee

4. Louse 5. Locust 6. Cockroach

7. Caterpillar 8. Ant 9. Bedbug

10. Housefly

Chapter-2:

a. 1. Fruit 2. Branch 3. Leaf

4. Trunk 5. Flower 6. Roots

7. Bud 8. Stem

b. 1. 9 2. 1 3. 5 4. 7 5. 2

6. 4 7. 6 8. 3 9. 8

c. Across 1. Lily 2. Marigold 3. Sunflower

Down 1. Lotus 4. Rose 5. Jasmine

d. 1. Mango 2. Pine Apple

3. Banana 4. Pomegranate

5. Grapes 6. Orange

7. Apple 8. Cherries

9. Water Melon

e. 1. Peas 2. Beans 3. Onion

4. Potato 5. Carrot 6. Tomato

7. Brinjal 8. Cabbage

9. Beetroot 10. Cucumber

11. Cauliflower 12. Bittergourd

Chapter-3:

a. 1. Apple 2. Ball 3. Cat

4. Doll 5. Egg 6. Fan

7. Grapes 8. Hat 9. Ice Cream

10. Jelly 11. Keys 12. Lamp

13. Mango 14. Net 15. Orange

16. Parrot 17. Quill 18. Rose

19. Slate 20. Tap 21. Umbrella



22. Vase 23. Watch 24. X-ray 25. Zip
- b.** 1. Bin 2. Nib 3. Bat
4. Tap 5. Pin 6. Net
7. Top 8. Pea 9. Ant
10. Tin 11. Nut 12. Tub
13. Bus 14. Sun
- c.** 1. Sun - Gun 2. Train - Rain
3. Bat - Rat 4. Gate - Plate
5. King - Ring 6. Moon - Spoon
7. Ball - Wall 8. Goat - Boat
- d.** 1. air 2. ink 3. man
4. ant 5. key 6. car
7. bow 8. owl 9. lock
10. mat 11. arm 12. tree
13. ball 14. hen 15. den
16. fly 17. rock 18. pen
19. butter
- f.** 1. Bat, Bag 2. Pen, Peg 3. Bun, Bug
4. Tin, Ten





ANSWERS (CLASS-1 / SEMESTER - II)

Now Easy English

Chapter-1 : At the Station

Reading

- Goa; 2. Train; 3. Sitting on a bench;
- Porter; 5. To step back and let the people get down first; 6. Ganesh got up and offered his seat to him.

Grammar

- Rahil's pencil; 2. Meena's house; 3. Anju's pet;
- Murli's football; 5. Sheeba's chocolate

Writing

Accept all reasonable answers

Listening

- Sourav; 2. Amrita; 3. Kamal; 4. Zoya

Chapter-2: The Queen of Hearts

Reading

- tarts; summer; 2. Knave; stole; 3. King;
- Steal

Vocabulary

big – small; happy – sad; near – far;
clever – foolish; rude – polite; laugh – cry;
lost – found

Grammar

- your-my-my; 2. His-His; 3. her; 4. My;
- Your; 6. His

Writing

Harry is tall and strong.

He has black hair and blue eyes.

Sally is short and thin.

She has brown hair and green eyes.

Chapter-3: Ariana

Reading

- Her father, stepmother, and two sisters;
- She was very beautiful; 3. To the king's palace for a party; 4. Wash the dishes, scrub the floor, make the beds; 5. Fairy godmother;
- They danced, and liked each other and got married.

Vocabulary

- PRINCESS; 2. FAIRY; 3. NAUGHTY;
- PARENTS; 5. SCHOOL; 6. PALACE

Grammar

- large; 2. chubby; 3. happy; 4. helpful;
- lovely; 6. tall

Writing

- red; 2. two; 3. old; 4. new; 5. yellow; 6. tasty

Chapter-4: Be Careful !

Reading

- zebra crossing; 2. cross the road; 3. stop;
- go ahead; 5. be ready to stop;
- traffic policeman

Vocabulary

- Nurse; 2. Fireman; 3. Doctor; 4. Pilot;
- Milkman; 6. Postman

Grammar

- sleeping; 2. crying; 3. singing; 4. painting;
- reading; 6. dancing

Writing

- Her mother is in the room;
- Reenu got a gift for Teena;
- Jack and Noel were dancing.

Chapter-5: At the Seaside

Reading

- To the seaside; 2. Wood; 3. To dig the sandy shore; 4. Sea water

Vocabulary

- Seaside; 2. Hills; 3. Mountains; 4. Desert;
- Forest

Grammar

- on; 2. under; 3. beside; 4. beside; 5. on;
- on; 7. in

Grammar

Unit - 1: Personal Pronouns ... I/ you / we Exercise

- A.** 2. Is 3. Are 4. Is 5. Is 6. Are 7. Am
8. Are 9. Is 10. Are

- B.** 2. We 3. He 4. They 5. He 6. It 7. I
8. we 9. they 10. you

- C.** 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. A 6. B

- D.** 2. Is she a good teacher ?
3. Are we children ?
4. Are they twelve years old ?



5. Are you a pretty girl ?
6. Is it an octopus ?
7. Are you singers ?

Unit - 2: Demonstrative Pronouns ... this/that
Exercise

- A.** 3. a 4. b 5. a
B. 3. This 4. That 5. This 6. That
C. 2. a car 3. is a snake 4. orange 5. house
D. 2. This is a camera.
 3. That is an octopus.
 4. This is a red pencil
 5. This is a white skirt.
 6. This is Jenny.
 7. That is an orange crayon.
E. 2. The sun is yellow.
 3. That is a dolphin.
 4. This is Mr. Suresh.
 5. That is a computer.

Unit - 3: There is ... There are

Exercise

- A.** 2. a 3. b 4. c 5. e
B. 2. b 3. a 4. b 5. a
C. 1. There are 2. There are 3. There is
 4. There is
D. 2. Are there 3. Is there 4. Is there
 5. Are there 6. Is there

Unit - 4: Imperatives do / don't

Exercise

- A.** 2. Eat 3. Don't run 4. Smoke 5. Open
B. 2. Don't smoke.
 3. Drink juice.
C. 2. Don't jump on the bed.
 3. Don't touch the cake.
 4. Don't climb that tree.
 5. Close the door.
D. 1. Play with this.
 2. Don't drink this milk.
 3. Don't swim in the pool.
 4. Don't read this book.
 5. Go to the park.

Explore Math

Chapter-1 : Exercise 1

- A.** 2. 5 children will get 4 cookies each.
 3. 5 children will get 3 peaches each.

4. 3 mangoes can be kept in each basket.
5. Each person will get 2 biscuits.

Chapter-3: Exercise 1

- A.** 1. 31, 32 2. 83, 84

Exercise 2

- A.** 1. circle 2. rectangle
 3. triangle 4. rectangle
 5. circle 6. square
B. 1. triangle 2. rectangle
 3. square 4. circle
C. 1. d 2. c 3. a 4. b

Exercise 3

- A.** 1. c 2. e 3. a 4. b 5. d

Exercise 5

- A.** 1. 62 2. 16 3. 30 4. 22 5. 7

B.

2	4	6	8	10
5	10	15	20	25
3	6	9	12	15
4	8	12	16	20

Chapter-4: Exercise 3

- A.** 1. kg 2. cm 3. l 4. kg

Chapter -5 : Exercise 3

- A.** 1. Tuesday 2. 24 hours
 3. 60 seconds 4. February
 5. 52 weeks 6. October
 7. 366 days

Exercise 4

- A.** 1. 4:00 2. 11:00 3. 7:00 4. 10:00

Chapter-6: Exercise 1

- A.** 2. 12 rupees 3. 10 rupees
 4. 3 rupees 5. 12 rupees

Chapter-7: Exercise 1

- A.** 1. 3 2. 5 3. 8
B. 1. 3 2. Rohan 3. Tanya 4. Tanya
 5. 4

Exploring Science

Chapter-1:

- A.** 1. Plants need water to live and grow.
 2. Animals need water especially for drinking



and also for bathing.

3. We need water for thirst, bath, wash, cook and put out fire.
4. No, water is essential like air to live.
5. Rain, well, hand pump.

B. 1. Tanks 2. clothes 3. food 4. water

C. 1. Putting off 2. thirsty 3. clothes 4. waste

D. 1. ✓ 2. ✗ 3. ✓ 4. ✓ 5. ✗

E. 1. iv 2. ii 3. i

F. 1. ii 2. i 3. iii

Think it Over (HOTS)

1. I use it for drinking.
2. By building dams. By using water to the necessity level. By storing water in lakes and ponds.

Chapter-2:

- A.** 1. Sunny, cold, rainy and winds.
 2. When sky is covered with clouds and occurs rain, that day is called as rainy day.
 3. By wearing woollen clothes with the help of heater or fire placement and having hot drinks like soup, coffee, tea.
 4. To keep the rooms cool in summer.
 5. To keep ourselves warm.

B. 1. Cotton clothes 2. Rain coats 3. Five seasons 4. Seven colours 5. Loo

C. 1. wind 2. feel, strongly 3. air

D. 1. iii 2. i 3. ii

E. 1. a 2. d 3. b 4. c 5. d

F. 1. ✗ 2. ✓ 3. ✗

Think it Over (HOTS)

1. Cotton clothes as they protect from heat and absorb sweat.
2. Because water goes out in way of sweat. So we drink more water in summer.

Chapter-3:

- A.** 1. The Sun gives us heat, light and energy.
 2. Moon Phases.
 3. The sun is a star. It gives us heat, light and energy. It is very big and round like a hot ball of gases.

B. 1. The sun and eight planets which wander

in fixed orbits in the space are called solar system.

2. The earth

C. 1. gases 2. shape 3. moon 4. east

D. 1. ✗ 2. ✗ 3. ✓ 4. ✓ 5. ✓

E. 1. c 2. c 3. d 4. d

F. 1. c 2. d 3. b 4. a

Think it Over (HOTS)

1. Because of the sunlight we cannot see the moon and stars in the day.
2. The moon is near to us.

Chapter-4:

- A.** 1. Hand, leg, stomach and chest
 2. breathe
 3. Get sense of taste

B. 1. catching sounds
 2. 206 Bones

C. 1. ✓ 2. ✓ 3. ✗ 4. ✗ 5. ✓

D. 1. iv 2. i 3. iii 4. iii 5. i 6. iii

E. 1. ii 2. iii 3. iv 4. v 5. i

- F.** 1. Skin - covers our body and protect internal organs of our body.
 2. Ears - We listen to sounds with ears
 3. Nose - smell and breathe
 4. Eyes - see
 5. Tongue - taste

G. 1. EAR 2. NOSE 3. EYES 4. TONGUE
 5. SKIN

Think it Over (HOTS)

1. Yes. Skin has the sensing power of heat.
2. Nose

Chapter-5:

- A.** 1. We feel tiredness when we don't take rest properly.
 2. To free teeth from germs formed by food particles and keep clean.
 3. To maintain good health.
 4. Foot-Ball and Hockey.
 5. To vacate dirt and germs.

B. 1. At 10 pm 2. At least 8 hours.
 3. To keep them neat and clean.

C. 1. fit 2. twice 3. rest 4. eight

D. 1. i 2. i 3. ii 4. i



- E. 1. ✗ 2. ✓ 3. ✗ 4. ✗ 5. ✗

Think it Over (HOTS)

Brain gets pain. Eyes get heat and organs act lazy. Total body feels uneasy.

Chapter-6:

- A.** 1. To stay healthy and strong.
2. Water plays a major role in our digestion process.
3. Carrot, tomato, apple, banana.
4. Rice, Wheat, Maize, Jowar.

- B.** 1. Egg, meat, fish and pulses.
2. Fruits and vegetables.
3. Junk food.
4. 1. Protective food 2. Body building food
3. Energy giving food

- C.** 1. ✗ 2. ✗ 3. ✓ 4. ✗ 5. ✓

- D.** 1. interal 2. vegetables 3. eat and chew
4. fruits

- E.** 1. iii 2. iii 3. iv 4. iii

- F.** Body-building food: Egg, meat, fish, pulses.
Energy-giving food: Wheat, rice, maize.
Protective- food: Carrot, beetroot, apple.

Think it over (HOTS)

1. Muscle pains, nerves weakness.
2. Body-building food from meat, eggs.

Chapter-7:

- A.** 1. Kutcha house, pucca house.
2. In the kitchen.
3. To protect ourselves from heat, cold, wind and rain.
- B.** 1. Cotton clothes 2. Woollen clothes
3. In Rainy season
4. We get wool from the fur of sheep.
- C.** 1. wool 2. woollen 3. cool 4. room 5. thieves
- D.** 1. ✗ 2. ✗ 3. ✗ 4. ✗ 5. ✗
- E.** 1. iv 2. iii 3. i 4. i 5. ii

Think it Over (HOTS)

1. To protect from falling rocks ever.
2. Angora goat, Eashmere goat.

Chapter-8:

- A.** 1. In order to keep ourselves and others safe.
2. 1. Use footpath and keep left.
2. Cross the road only at the zebra crossing.

3. 1. Don't play with power equipments such as switches. 2. Don't play with sharp tools such as blades.

4. 1. Do not lean out of windows of a moving bus.
2. Do not board or get down from a moving bus.
5. Should stop and do not cross the road.

- B.** 1. No, we should not. 2. No, we should not.
3. We should not push others while climbing stairs.
4. We should not play with switches, plugs or sharp tools.

- C.** 1. road 2. lean 3. zebra 4. play 5. safety

- D.** 1. ✓ 2. ✗ 3. ✓ 4. ✓ 5. ✓

- E.** 1. i 2. ii 3. ii 4. i

- F.** 1. G 2. B 3. B 4. G

Think it Over (HOTS)

1. I call any elder to light a candle because I cannot manage the flames of fire and wax.
2. I stand on the footpath and follow the signals. Cross the road through zebra lines.

Social Studies

Chapter-1:

- A.** 1. 'Sorry', 'Please', 'Excuse me' and 'Thank you'.
2. I keep my hair tidy by combing and head bath daily.
3. i) I should take a bath daily.
ii) I should keep my hair neat and tidy.
4. We should brush our teeth twice a day.

- B.** 1. Polite 2. Clean 3. Tidy 4. Twice

- C.** 1. F 2. F 3. T 4. F

- D.** 1. iv 2. iii 3. i 4. ii

- E.** 1. d 2. b 3. c 4. a

Chapter-2:

- A.** 1. We learn to read and write, good habits and manners to play with our friends and to help each other in a school.
2. Assembly hall, Library, Activity room, water room, Medical room, Staff room and play ground.
3. I get pure water from water room in our



school.

4. We should not talk louder and make noise in a library.

B. 1. playground 2. learn 3. classroom 4. spend

C. 1. Activity room 2. Library 3. Assembly Hall
4. Canteen

D. 1. b 2. b 3. d 4. b

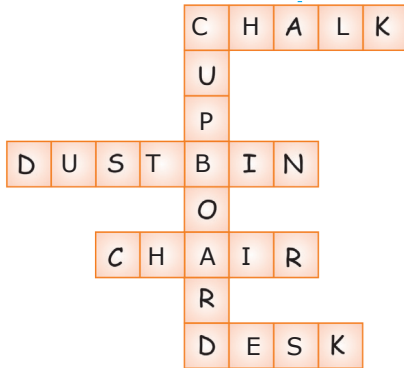
Chapter-3:

A. 1. There are forty students in my class.
2. There are many sections of one class because there are many children.
3. We stand up and greet the teacher when the teacher enters the classroom.
4. When the teacher asks a question, I raise my hand and answer the question standing up politely.

B. 1. dustbin 2. teacher 3. blackboard
4. display board

C. 1. B 2. G 3. B 4. B

D.



E. 1. b 2. c 3. a 4. a

Chapter-4:

A. 1. i) We should not open the doors to strangers.
ii) We should not touch electric goods with wet hands.
iii) We should not play with gas stoves.
2. i) I should always across the road using Zebra crossing.
ii) Before crossing the road I should look towards our left and right side.
iii) If the road is clear then only I should cross the road.

3. A place where the road is marked with black and white lines is known as zebra crossing.

4. William L.Potts invented the traffic lights.

B. 1. sharp 2. strangers 3. zebra 4. dustbin

C. 1. F 2. F 3. F 4. T

D. 1. iv 2. iii 3. ii 4. i

E. 1. a 2. c 3. b 4. c

Chapter-5:

A. 1. Water found under the ground is called underground water.
2. The Earth is made up of land and water.
3. The shape of the Earth is like an orange.
4. A small model of the Earth is known as Globe.
5. The land is found on earth in various forms such as mountains, hills, plains and forests.

B. 1. land 2. globe 3. orange 4. salty

C. 1. F 2. F 3. F 4. T

D. 1. iv 2. iii 3. ii 4. i

E. 1. a 2. a 3. a 4. c

Chapter-6:

A. 1. The boy is sitting under the tree.
2. An aeroplane is flying over the tree.
3. A cow is farthest to the house.
4. The peacock is under the tree.

B. 1. middle 2. under 3. over 4. behind

C. 1. T 2. F 3. T 4. T

D. 1. b 2. b 3. c 4. b

Chapter-7:

A. 1. Early humans not have an ordinary life because they had no houses to live in.
2. The early humans use to wear leaves of trees and skins of wild animals.
3. The fire produced for the first time by rubbing two stones together.
4. They ate raw meat, wild fruits and roots.
5. The early humans tamed wild animals to make them work for them.

B. 1. farmers 2. fire 3. leaves 4. ordinary



C.

	House	Food	Dress	Tools
Early Man	Caves, Under trees	Raw meat, wild fruits and roots	Leaves of trees, skins of wild animals	Heavy and pointed stones
You	Building	Rice, vegetables	Cotton and silk clothes	Iron tools

D. 2, 3, 4, 5, 13

E. 1. iv 2. iii 3. i 4. ii

F. 1.a 2. c 3. b 4.c

General Knowledge

Chapter - 1:

- a. 1. Teacher 2. Cook 3. Doctor
4. Gardener 5. Carpenter
6. Mason 7. Police 8. Post Man
- b. 1. Tiger 2. Tirunga 3. Peacock
4. Four Lions 5. Lotus
- c. 1. Gandhiji 2. Jawaharlal Nehru
3. Netaji Subhash Chandra Bose
4. Bhagat Singh
5. Bala Gangadhar Tilak
6. Mother Theresa
7. Abdul Kalam 8. Amitab Bachan
9. S.P. Balasubrahmanyam

Chapter-2:

- a. 1. Hopscotch 2. Hide and Seek
3. Skipping 4. Marbles
5. Swing 6. Spinning Tops
7. Sack Race 8. Jump Rope

- b. 1 - f 2 - e 3 - d
4 - c 5 - b 6 - a

- c. 1. Foot ball 2. Cricket 3. Basket ball
4. Badminton 5. Tennis 6. Hockey
7. Volley ball 8. Kabaddi

- d. 1. Carrom 2. Chess 3. Ludo
4. Playing Cards 5. Table Tennis
6. Snakes and Ladders











Chapter-4:









- a. 1. Please 2. Thank You 3. Sorry
4. Excuse me 5. You are Welcome
- b. 1. Kind 2. Honesty 3. Obedience
4. Help

Chapter-6:

- a. Cell Phone

b.

	14		3
	3		5
	6		5
	6		11
	5		3

- c. 1.  2.  3.  4. 
5.  6.  7.  8. 





ANSWERS (CLASS - 2 / SEMESTER - I)

Now Easy English

Chapter 1: Mice are so very nice

Reading:

1. long; 2. sharp; 3. night; 4. fear

Vocabulary:

1. ducks; 2. flag; 3. joker; 4. raining;
5. tiger

Grammar:

1. She; 2. They; 3. It; 4. He; 5. You; 6. I

Spelling:

2. Drum; 3. Plum; 4. Brick; 5. Flag;
6. Prawn; 7. Glass; 8. Frog

Writing:

1. tail; 2. milk; 3. door; 4. flying

Listening:

1. Cheese; 2. Teeth; 3. Pizza; 4. Street

Chapter 2: Dreaming Away

Reading:

1. 12; 2. She loved to dream; 3. Housework, going to the market to sell the eggs; 4. She would sell the eggs and get money; 5. No. Her foot hit a stone and she stumbled. The eggs fell from the basket and broke

Vocabulary:

1. helped; 2. farm; 3. earn; 4. stumbled; 5. cost

Grammar:

1. on; 2. in; 3. at; 4. on; 5. at

Spelling:

1. Gate; 2. Pine; 3. Cane; 4. Dust; 5. Cost;
6. Lame; 7. Best; 8. Star

Writing:

1. Ben likes cats; 2. Sam is taller than Sally;
3. The house is by the river; 4. The central zoo has two baby cheetahs; 5. I will be going for a movie.

Listening:

2, 1, 3, 4.

Chapter 3: The Moon

Reading:

1. The moon's face looks like a clock on the wall; 2. The moon shines on thieves on the garden wall, streets, fields and harbour quays;

3. The cat, mouse, dog and bat;

4. Flowers and children close their eyes.

Vocabulary:

Alligators-grunt; Bees – buzz; Frogs – croak;
Hens – cluck; Lions – roar

Grammar:

1. an, a; 2. a; 3. An, a; 4. an; 5. an

Spelling:

1. Clock; 2. Garden; 3. Sleep; 4. Children;
5. Morning

Chapter 4 :The Wise Farmer

Reading:

1. His cow; 2. The merchant did not want to pay the price that the farmer wanted for the cow. 3. The people took them to a judge. 4. The farmer stuck his stick into the ground and said that this was the centre of the Earth; 5. The judge knew the farmer was clever because of the answer he gave.

Vocabulary:

1. Buy; 2. Short; 3. Laugh; 4. Stop; 5. Dirty

Grammar:

1. riding; 2. eating; 3. sweeping; 4. went;
5. win; 6. cook

Spelling:

1. Bread and butter; 2. Salt and pepper;
3. Needle and thread; 4. Cup and saucer;
5. Nail and hammer.

Writing:

1. What a lovely day!; 2. Where are you going?;
3. How terrible! 4. This is an interesting book.
5. When did the bell ring? 6. This is my home.

Listening:

a. 3; b. 2; c. 4; d. 1

Chapter 5 : Attentive Deepak

Reading:

1. Near railway track; 2. There was a big stone lying on the track; 3. Deepak thought the stone may cause an accident; 4. Red was a sign of danger; 5. Yes; 6. Yes.

Vocabulary:

1. Listen; 2. hear; 3. hear; 4. listen

Grammar:

1. This is Sarita's computer; 2. This is William's car. 3. This is Sam's favourite movie. 4. The dog's tail is black. 5. The car's horn is funny.

Pronunciation:

1. buy; 2. won; 3. rays; 4. two



Writing:

1. playing football; 2. doing her homework;
3. sleeping.

Chapter 6 : The Lion and the Mouse**Reading:**

A: 1. True; 2. True; 3. False; 4. False

B: 1. The lion let the mouse go because the mouse was funny; 2. The lion did not believe that a small mouse could help the king of the jungle. 3. The mouse was afraid of the lion because the lion could eat him. 4. Yes. He helped the lion when he was in danger.

Vocabulary:

1. Orange; 2. Banana; 3. Uniform; 4. Owl;
5. Inkpot; 6. Elephant; 7. Umbrella.

Grammar:

1. Neetu – she; 2. A cat – it; 3. My cousin, my sister and I – We; 4. Yakub and Dinesh – They;
5. Roy – He.

Writing:

2. India is my motherland. I love my country;
3. The farmers are very hard-working. They grow crops in the field; 4. I have a computer. It is very useful;
5. Raja loves his little brother. He takes care of him;
6. Jaya is a happy girl. She always smiles.

Listening:

1. Plants and animals; 2. She sows new plants in her garden with her grandma; 3. Her two pet dogs;
4. Tabby; 5. Nuts and green chillies.

Grammar**Chapter 1: Adjectives ... big / cold / sad****Exercises:**

- A.** happy - sad , young - old, big - small,
long - short, fat-thin
B. 2. long 3. big 4. old 5. small 6. sad
C. 2. a young man 3. the bad boy
4. a fat bear 5. He is sad. 6. They are glad.
D. 1. short 2. not old 3. happy 4. fat 5. long
6. small

Chapter 2: Wh - Questions ... who / what**Exercises:**

- A.** 3. Who's this ? 4. What's this ?
5. Who's this ?
B. This is a potato; That is Suman;
This is a cake.

- C.** 3. Who's this ? 4. What's that ?
5. Who's that?

- D.** 3. This is Tom. 4. This is a car.
5. This is Dave. 6. This is a bear.

Chapter 3: Wh - Questions ... where / when Exercises:

- A.** 2. When 3. When 4. Where 5. Where
6. When

- B.** Where; When; Where; When; When

- C.** 2. When is it ? 3. Where is it ?
4. Where is it ? 5. When is it ?

- D.** 2. They're in the park.
3. When do leaves fall ?
4. They fall in the autumn.
5. Where are the animals ?

Chapter 4:**Prepositions... in / on / under / beside****Exercises:**

- A.** 2-C, 3-A, 4-E, 5-D

- B.** 2. Where are 3. Where is 4. Where are
5. Where is

- C.** 2. under 3. beside 4. on the T.V.
5 in the box 6. beside the table

- D.** 2. the cat 3. Mohini 4. are 5. on

Explore Math**Chapter 1 : Exercise 1**

- A.** 1. Odd 2. Odd 3. Odd 4. Even
5. Odd 6. Even 7. Odd
B. 2. 9 – Odd 3. 6 – Even 4. 4 – Even
5. 7 – Odd

Exercise 2

- A.** 1. Cow 2. Snake 3. Cow 4. Camel
B. 1. 15 2. 8 3. 23 4. 4 5. 20
C. 1. 11 2. 22 3. 8 4. 15 5. 2
D. 1. 9 2. 14 3. 23 4. 4 5. 26

Exercise 3

- A.** 2. 8 3. 8 4. 4 5. 8

Exercise 4

- A.** 2. 3 3. 4 4. 1 5. 2

Chapter 2 : Exercise 1

- A.** 2. 154, 155, 157 3. 348, 350
4. 416, 418, 420 5. 669, 671, 672
B. 2. 948, 949, 950, 951, 952
3. 152, 153, 154, 155, 156
4. 369, 370, 371, 372, 373
5. 439, 440, 441, 442, 443
C. 2. 163, 162, 161, 160, 159
3. 247, 246, 245, 244, 243
4. 393, 392, 391, 390, 389
5. 466, 465, 464, 463, 462

**Exercise 2**

- A. 2. Seven hundred and seventy eight
3. One hundred and twelve
4. Nine hundred and seventy seven
5. One hundred and nine

Exercise 3

- A. 2. 677, 329 3. 220,111 4. 226,200
5. 432, 176 6. 424, 330

Exercise 4

- A. 1. < 2. < 3. < 4. > 5. < 6. <

Exercise 6

- A. 2. $700 + 10 + 9$ 3. $400 + 30 + 7$
4. $600 + 80 + 2$ 5. $300 + 70 + 5$
6. $500 + 30 + 6$ 7. $100 + 80 + 2$
8. $800 + 30 + 5$

Exercise 7

- A. 1. 43, 75, 166, 294 2. 39, 645, 787, 915
3. 134, 272, 544, 612 4. 59, 229, 324, 614
5. 51, 62, 234, 561

Exercise 8

- A. 1. 750, 352, 261, 241 2. 741, 611, 519, 306
3. 920, 269, 228, 62 4. 787, 349, 263, 111
5. 541, 394, 286, 102

Exercise 9

- A. 1. 9, 12, 15, 21, 24, 27
B. 1. 15, 20, 25, 35, 40, 50
C. 1. 20, 30, 40, 60, 70, 90
D. 1. 8, 12, 20, 24, 28, 36
E. 1. 200, 300, 500, 600, 700, 900
F. 1. 150, 200, 250, 350, 400
G. 1. 60, 80, 120, 140, 180

Chapter 3 : Exercise 1

- A. 1. P - 6, F - 6 2. P - 70, F - 7
3. P - 500, F - 5 4. P - 10, F - 1
B. 2. 3 tens and 7 ones 3. 2 tens and 4 ones
4. 6 tens and 7 ones 5. 5 tens and 3 ones

Exercise 2

- A. 2. 75 3. 79 4. 73 5. 54 6. 37

Exercise 4

- A. 1. 390 2. 840 3. 730 4. 870
5. 570 6. 610

Exercise 6

- A. 1. 3 hundreds + 5 tens + 8 ones
2. 4 hundreds + 7 tens + 2 ones
3. 6 hundreds + 1 ten + 8 ones
4. 8 hundreds + 3 tens + 6 ones
5. 2 hundreds + 4 tens + 5 ones
B. 2. 356 3. 793 4. 531 5. 114

Chapter 4 : Exercise 1

- A. 2. 7 3. 5 4. 1 5. 3
B. 2. 10 3. 8 4. 9 5. 10

Exercise 2

- A. 2. 7 3. 2 4. 6 5. 8 6. 4

Exercise 3

- A. 1. 17 2. 28 3. 39

Exercise 4

- A. 1. 89 2. 77 3. 59

Exercise 5

- A. 1. 889 2. 979 3. 798

Exercise 6

- A. 2. $30 + 4 = 3 \text{ tens} + 4 \text{ ones}$
3. $40 + 7 = 4 \text{ tens} + 7 \text{ ones}$
4. $60 + 9 = 6 \text{ tens} + 9 \text{ ones}$
B. 2. 3 hundreds + 3 tens 3. 4 hundreds + 7 tens
4. 1 hundred + 3 tens 5. 1 hundred + 6 tens

Exercise 7

- A. 1. 82 2. 83 3. 71 4. 92 5. 92
6. 83
B. 1.523 2. 880 3. 919 4. 981 5. 762
6. 486

Exercise 8

- A. 1. 44 marks 2. 41 fruits 3. 63 children
4. 102 kgs 5. 59 marbles

Chapter 5: Exercise 1

- A. 2. 5 3. 0 4. 4 5. 0 6. 3 7. 7
8. 0

- B. 1. 19 2. 5 3. 27 4. 12 5. 23 6. 7

Exercise 2

- A. 1. 22 2. 32 3. 31 4. 35 5. 42
6. 40

Exercise 3

- A. 1. 313 2. 314 3. 334 4. 221 5. 141

Exercise 4

- A. 1. 104 2. 258 3. 174 4. 358 5. 594
6. 141

Exercise 5

- A. 1. 10 2. 26 3. 39 4. 29 5. 28
6. 27

Exercise 6

- A. 1. 118 2. 109 3. 157 4. 237
5. 428 6. 155

Chapter 6: Exercise 1

- A. 2. $4 + 4 + 4 + 4 + 4 = 20$
3. $4 + 4 + 4 + 4 + 4 + 4 + 4 = 28$
4. $4 + 4 + 4 + 4 = 16$
5. $4 + 4 + 4 = 12$

- B. 2. 2×4 3. 4×4 4. 3×4 5. 7×4

- C. 2. $4 + 4 + 4 + 4 + 4 + 4 + 4 = 28$

3. $4 + 4 + 4 = 12$

4. $4 + 4 + 4 + 4 + 4 + 4 + 4 + 4 + 4 + 4 = 36$

5. $4 + 4 = 8$

Exercise 2

- A. 2. 3×5 3. 3×4 4. 3×2 5. 3×6

- B.** 2. 50 3. 16 4. 54 5. 16
C. 2. $(3 + 3 + 3 + 3 + 3 + 3 + 3) = 21$
 3. $(5 + 5 + 5) = 15$
 4. $(6 + 6 + 6 + 6) = 24$
 5. $(8 + 8 + 8 + 8 + 8) = 40$
D. 2. $(6 + 6 + 6 + 6 + 6) = 30$
 3. $(4 + 4 + 4 + 4 + 4 + 4 + 4) = 28$
 4. $(9 + 9) = 18$
 5. $(5 + 5 + 5 + 5 + 5 + 5 + 5) = 35$

Exercise 3

- A.** 2. 0 3. 3 4. 9 5. 0 6. 1 7. 4

Exercise 4

- A.** 2. 24 3. 70 4. 15 5. 20 6. 15

Exercise 5

- A.** 1. 93 2. 80 3. 70 4. 39 5. 82
 6. 44

Exercise 6

- A.** 1. 364 2. 78 3. 216 4. 128
 5. 368 6. 72
B. 1. 32 flowers 2. 24 books
 3. 45 students 4. 210 chocolates
 5. 72 books

Exploring Science

Chapter 1 :

- A.** 1. Living things move, feel, react, breathe, take food, grow and reproduce.
 2. Foot ball is a non-living thing. Because it do not have all the features of living things.
 3. Green plants make their own food with the help of water, air and sunlight.
 4. Animals need sense organs to search for food or to sense danger.
B. 1. Stomata 2. Reproduction 3. Five
 4. Natural non-living things
C. 1. fly 2. crawl 3. lungs 4. sense
D. 1. X 2. X 3. ✓ 4. X
E. 1. ii 2. i 3. ii 4. i 5. iii

Chapter 2 :

- A.** 1. Trees contain hard woody stems called trunks.
 2. Herbs are very small plants. They live for very short period. So, they are also called seasonal plants.
 3. Shrubs are small bushy plants. They are not as tall as trees. **Ex.** Rose, Jasmine, Cotton plant etc.
 4. Coconut and Papaya are branchless trees.
 5. Plants like money plant, pea plant, grapevine have weak and soft stems. They need support to stand and grow.
 6. Creepers are plants with weak and soft stems. They spread on the ground as their

fruits are very big. Ex. Cucumber, pumpkin, watermelon etc.

- B.** 1. Rose 2. Brinjal 3. Cactus 4. Water

- C.** 1. climber 2. branches 3. creeper
 4. cactus 5. shrubs

- D.** 1. ✓ 2. ✓ 3. X 4. X 5. ✓

- E.** 1. a 2. c 3. c 4. c 5. a

- F.** 1. e 2. d 3. f 4. b 5. a 6.c

Chapter 3 :

- A.** 1. Plants help us in a number of ways. We get many things from plants.
 2. Fruits like mango, orange, banana and vegetables like brinjal, tomato, radish, carrot, cabbage etc are obtained from plants.
 3. Plants like Tulsi, neem, mint and eucalyptus are used for making medicines. So, they are called as medicinal plants.
 4. a) Gum is made from the latex of trees like keekar and Acacia.
 b) Paper is made from the pulp of trees like bamboo.
 c) We get rubber from the latex of rubber tree.
B. 1. Rose and Jasmine 2. Medicinal 3. gum
 4. bamboo 5. cotton
C. 1. X 2. ✓ 3. ✓ 4. ✓ 5. ✓
D. 1. a, c 2. c
E. 1. Tulsi 2. Jute 3. Tea 4. Acacia 5. Banyan
F. 1. Teak, Neem 2. Coconut, Mustard
 3. Cotton, Jute 4. Tulsi, Neem
 5. Rice, Wheat 6. Tomato, brinjal
G. 1. d 2. e 3. b 4. c 5. a

Chapter 4 :

- A.** 1. We tame some animals. These are called domestic animals.
 2. Cat and Dog are kept as pets in our homes.
 3. Skin of animals like buffalo, goat, etc. are used for making leather articles.
 4. We get silk from silkworms.
B. 1. camel 2. Cow, Buffalo 3. Sheep
C. 1. Honey 2. Camel 3. donkey 4. fish
 5. cow 6. sheep 7. silkworm
D. 1. a 2. b 3. b 4. c
E. 1. e 2. c 3. d 4. b 5. a

Chapter 5 :

- A.** 1. There are some animals that feed on the flesh of dead and decaying animals. They help to maintain cleanliness of the forest. These are called Scavengers. **Ex.:** Jackel, Hyena, Vulture.
 2. Carnivores are flesh-eating animals. They hunt and kill small animals and eat their flesh. **Ex.** Wolf, leopard etc.
 3. Bear is an Omnivore as it eats both plants



and animals.

4. Fish and Sea-horse are aquatic animals.
5. Animals that live both on land and in water are called amphibians.

Ex. Frogs, tortoise etc.

- B.** 1. sea-horse 2. Goat 3. Rat 4. Jackal
5. Tiger
- C.** 1. herbivorous 2. fox 3. vulture 4. animals
5. plants 6. carnivores
- D.** 1. X 2. X 3. X 4. ✓ 5. ✓
- E.** 1. b 2. c 3. d 4. c 5. c 6. b
- F.** 1. e 2. c 3. b 4. a 5. f 6. d

Chapter 6 :

- A.** 1. Air contains gases like oxygen, carbon dioxide, nitrogen and dust particles.
2. a) Air has weight. b) Air occupies space.
3. Fast moving air is called wind
4. Plants make the air fresh and clean
- B.** 1. Smoke 2. Air 3. Wind
- C.** 1. Germs 2. Smoke 3. dust 4. plants
5. weight
- D.** 1. ✓ 2. ✓ 3. X 4. X 5. ✓
- E.** 1. c 2. a 3. a
- F.** 1. g 2. a 3. e 4. c 5. b 6. f 7. d

Chapter 7 :

- A.** 1. Water from all sources is not always safe for drinking because it may contain many impurities and germs.
2. In our home we use ground water / Municipal water.
3. Sea water is salty. So it is not used for drinking.
4. Filtered and boiled water is safe drinking
- B.** 1. Wells 2. salty 3. Rain 4. Three-fourth
- C.** 1. salty 2. Rain 3. germs 4. Filter and boil
5. Water treatment plant 6. well
- D.** 1. ✓ 2. X 3. ✓ 4. X 5. X
- E.** 1. b 2. a 3. c 4. d
- F.** 1. b 2. a 3. d 4. e 5. c

Chapter 8 :

- A.** 1. The warm atmosphere changes the solid ice cubes into water.
2. By cooling in a freezer, water changes into ice.
3. Water is always on the move in a never ending cycle. This is called water cycle.
4. a) The process of conversion of solid ice into water is called melting.
b) The process of conversion of water into ice is called freezing.

c) The process of conversion of water vapour into water is called condensation.

- B.** 1. Condensation 2. Melting 3. Rain
4. Freezing
- C.** 1. Solid 2. three 3. Vapour 4. Steam
- D.** 1. b 2. a 3. a
- E.** 1. d 2. a 3. b 4. c

Social Studies

Chapter 1 :

- A.** i) Brothers and sisters are called siblings.
ii) The children of our uncles and aunts are known as cousins.
iii) Mother and father
- B.** 1. I belong to a small family (or)
2. There are members are there in our family.
3. My mother helps me with my homework.
4. I have cousins.
5. A large family consists of Father, mother and three or more children.
- C.** 1. Sharma 2. small 3. cousine 4. relative
- D.** 1. T 2. T 3. F 4. F
- E.** M - 2, 3, 6 F - 1, 4, 8 M, F - 5 S - 7
- F.** 1. Nuclear family 2. Single parent family
3. Large family 4. Joint family
- G.** 1. i 2. i 3. i 4. iv

Chapter 2 :

- A.** 1. We eat food to survive.
2. Animals give us milk, milk products like butter, curd, cheese, meat and meat products.
3. i) Have meals at proper time. ii) Chew the food properly. iii) Eat different kinds of food iv) Avoid over eating. v) Never waste food.
4. We have to take light food at dinner.
5. We should not eat Junk food because it is bad for our health and can lead to illness
- B.** 1. raw 2. vegetables 3. Junk food
4. uncovered
- C.** 1. T 2. F 3. F 4. F
- D.** 1, 3, 5, 6, 8
- E.** 1. iii 2. iv 3. i 4. ii
- F.** 1. ii 2. ii 3. i

Chapter 3 :

- A.** 1. Clothes are our basic needs because they protect our body from heat, cold and rain.
2. We wear rain coats in the rainy season.
3. Clothes made up of synthetic fibre like rayon, nylon, terylen and polyester are called man made or artificial fibres.
4. We should wear colourful and attractive dresses on the occasions of festivals, marriages and birthdays.

- B.** 1. cotton 2. silk 3. synthetic 4. uniform
C. 1. F 2. T 3. F 4. T
D. A. 2 B. 4 C. 1 D.3
E. S- 2, 5, 6 W - 3, 7 R - 1, 4, 8
F. 1.ii 2. ii 3. iii 4. iv

Chapter 4 :

- A.** 1. We spend most our time for eating, reading, sleeping and watching T.V. in a house.
 2. Kuchcha houses are made up of wood, stones, mud and straw.
 3. A bungalow is an independent house. It is a single storeyed.
 4. A house which is shifted from one place to other is known as temporary house. **Ex.** Tent
B. 1. huts 2. bungalow 3. germs 4. water
C. 1. T 2. F 3. T 4. T
D. 1. Tent 2. Caravan 3. Houseboat 4. Hut
E. 1. CARAVAN 2. TENT 3. BUNGALOW 4. HUT
F. 1. ii 2. ii 3. iv 4. ii

Chapter 5 :

- A.** 1. We cannot live without water because it needs to stay alive.
 2. We get water from rivers, ponds, lakes, seas, oceans and waterfalls.
 3. Rain water collects through tube wells and hand pumps.
 4. We should not waste water because it is precious.
B. 1. Water 2. Rain 3. drink 4. store
C 1. F 2. T 3. F 4. T
D. 1. POND 2. TAP 3. RAIN 4. HANDPUMP
E. 1. Washing 2. Boating 3. Drinking 4. irrigation 5. Bathing 6. Cooking
F. 1. iv 2. iv 3. iv

Chapter 6 :

- A.** 1. Grocery shop, chemist shop, stationery shop and milkbooth.
 2. We see trees, swings and seesaws in a park.
 3. Police guard the neighbourhood from danger.
 4. Post office is useful for us to send letters, parcels, telegrams and money orders.
 5. Books, pencils, pens and erasers.
B. 1. greenary 2. medicines 3. greenary 4. clinic
C. 1. F 2. F 3. T 4. T
D. 1. revolves 2. stamp 3. postbox 4. dispensary
E. 1. Stationary shop 2. Greengrocer 3. Chemist shop 4. Grocery shop
F. 1. ii 2. iv 3. i 4. i

Chapter 7:

- A.** 1. God, Bhagwan, Allah and Wahe guru.
 2. Hindus, pray in the temple offering flowers, fruits, sweets etc to God.

3. Muslims offer prayers or namaaz in mosque.
 4. The Sikhs go to a gurudwara to pray.
B. 1. namaaz 2. largest 3. kirtan 4. church
C. 1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F
D. 1. Namaaz 2. Cross 3. Mosques 4. Agarbatti
E. 1. iv 2. iii 3. ii 4. i
F. 1.iii 2.i 3. ii

General Knowledge

Chapter 2:Animal World

a. Amazing Animals

1. Rhinoceros 2. Polar bear 3. Deer
 4. Hippopotamus 5. Zebra 6. Porcupine 7. Yak
 8. Seal 9. Giant Pandas 10. Giraffe 11. Whale

b. Land or Water :

1. Land 2. Water 3. Land 4. Land and Water
 5. Land and Water 6. Land 7. Land 8. Land
 9. Land 10. Water 11. Land

c. Annie Kinds:

1. W 2. P 3. F 4. F 5. W 6. P 7. W 8. F
 9. W 10.W 11. F 12.W

d. Annie Babies :

1. Cow 2. Frog 3. Tiger 4. Duck 5. Cat
 6. Hen 7. Goat 8. Deer 9. Kangaroo 10. Dog

e. Annie Homes :

1. E 2. G 3. F 4. D 5. C 6. B 7. H 8. A

f. Tweet Tweet :

1. Pigeon 2. Kite 3. Pelican 4. Robin
 5. Penguin 6. Owl 7. Quill 8. Sparrow 9. King Fisher 10. Crane 11. Flamingo 12. Peacock

Chapter 3: Plants and Trees

a. Small Plants :

1. Rose 2. Wheat 3. Jasmine 4. Maize
 5. Cotton 6. Tomato 7. Mint 8. Grapes
 9. Beans 10. Pumpkin

b. Big Trees:

1. Eucalyptus 2. Coconut 3. Gulmohar 4. Pine
 5. Neem 6. Ashoka 7. Bamboo 8. Palm

c. Leafy Answer:

1. H 2. I 3. F 4. G 5. D 6. E 7. B 8. C
 9. A

d. All about Nuts:

1. Walnut 2. Cashewnut 3. Pista 4. Almond
 5. Coconut 6. Beetal nut 7. Chessnut 8. Peanut
 9. Haze nut

e. Route to Roots:

1. Carrot 2. Garlic 3. Onion 4. Potato 5. Sweet Potato 6. Ginger 7. Sugar beet 8. Turnip
 9. Radish

f. Veg - Fruity Crossword:

1. APPLE 2. POTATO 3. TOMATO 4. ORANGE
 5. ONION 6. MANGO 7. BRINJAL 8. GRAPES
 9. PEAS 10. CARROT



Chapter 4: Language and Literature

a. Alphabetical Order:

- 3
- 8
- 1
- 7
- 9
- 5
- 6
- 4
- 8
- 2
- 9
- 6

b. They go Together:

- Sun and Moon
- Lock and Key
- Bat and Ball
- Bread and Butter
- Chair and Table
- Needle and Thread
- Cup and Saucer
- Hands and Glows
- Pant and Shirt

c. Body Language:

- Foot
- Head
- Legs
- Hands
- Teeth
- arms
- eyes
- neck

d. Tales and Stories:

- Snow white
- Alice
- Red
- Hood
- Sailor
- Aladdin
- Bean stalk
- Boots
- Piped

10 Goldilocks

Chapter 5: Science Sense

a. Our Body:

- Heart
- Brain
- Stomach
- Kidneys
- Joint
- Lungs
- Spine

b. Answer the Body Questions:

- Eyes
- Ears
- Skin
- Skin
- Stomach
- Water
- Joints
- 206

c. The Sun:

- Round
- Far
- Ball
- The Sun
- East
- Nearest
- day
- dark

d. Seasons:

- Sunny day
- Cold
- June
- December
- Rainy
- February, March
- Cool drinks
- Umbrella and Rain coat





ANSWERS (CLASS - 2 / SEMESTER - II)

Now Easy English

Chapter 1 : Babyland

Reading:

1. Babyland; 2. They dream, wake, pray, laugh, grow, shout and grow; 3. Mother; 4. She is kind and sweet; 5. W. B. Rands

Grammar:

1. has; 2. has; 3. has ; 4. has; 5. have; 6. have

Spelling:

1. Table; 2. Nail; 3. Needle; 4. Comb

Chapter 2 : Little Red Riding Hood

Reading:

1. Her mother sent her to her Grandmother's house.
2. She told her not to stop anywhere or talk to strangers; 3. She thought they were pretty; 4. A wolf; 5. He wanted to eat Red Riding Hood; 6. A wood-cutter;

Vocabulary:

1. Spread; 2. Spray; 3. Sprouts; 4. Sprinter; 5. Splash; 6. Split; 7. Splatter; 8. Spring

Grammar:

1. in; 2. at; 3. for; 4. under; 5. on

Writing

You, through a forest ; some lilies, them for you ; appeared; had worn your clothes and was sleeping in your bed; killed the wolf with his axe.

Listening:

1. Grandmother; 2. Uncle; 3. Aunt ; 4. Cousin;
5. Cousin

Chapter 3 : Clever Raman

Reading:

1. A Telugu poet; 2. He was always happy and made everyone laugh; 3. He did not like the picture;
4. He asked Tenali to not show him his face for a week;
5. He had covered his face with a pot;
6. He cheered the King

Vocabulary:

1. knock; 2. wriggle; 3. knit; 4. knee; 5. write

Grammar:

1. Rumi is not a tall boy; 2. Lemons are not yellow;
3. My tea is not hot; 4. The cupboard is not heavy;
5. Sheetal is not dancing.

Spelling:

1. Pretty; 2. Balloon; 3. Mummy; 4. Daddy;
5. Bottle; 6. Mirror

Writing:

1. A pot; 2. Clay; 3. A potter; 4. yes/ No ;
5. It is used for water

Chapter 4: Saving Karvandi

Reading:

1. In the forest near the village; 2. They were a home to the birds who also ate the berries;
3. When the trees blossomed; 4. The two strangers went to the forest to cut the trees;
5. The teacher rang the school bell to warn the villagers; 6. They ran because they were afraid of being caught.

Vocabulary:

1. Angry – furious; 2. Help – assist; 3. Happy – cheerful;
4. House – villa; 5. Empty – vacant; 6. Easy – simple

Grammar:

2. He has some apples but not any oranges;
3. He has some books but not any erasers;
4. She has some flowers but not any stickers;
5. He has some bottles but not any cups.

Spelling:

1. pill; 2. fizz; 3. fluff; 4. muzzle; 5. heels;
6. staff; 7. fuss

Chapter 5 : The Watchful Eye of God

Reading:

1. Stories of God and his greatness; 2. Uncle Sohanlal; 3. Steal some things from the mall;
4. Someone was watching him.
5. No. he was a bad man.
6. We cannot hide from others.

Vocabulary:

1. No, I do not.; 2. Yes, I do; 3. Yes, I do. 4. No, he does not; 5. Yes, she does; 6. No, he does not.

Grammar:

1. ripe 2. tall 3. soft 4. funny 5. happy 6. hot

Chapter 6 : Limerick

Reading:

1. False; 2. True; 3. False; 4. True

Vocabulary:

1. Chin; 2. Insect; 3. Pumpkin; 4. Kind; 5. Mint;
6. Brain; 7. Pain

Grammar:



1. Seaweed; 2. Flowerpot; 3. Tablecloth;
4. Butterfly; 5. Pancakes; 6. Birthday

Grammar

Chapter 1: Have / Has

Exercises:

- A.** 2- A, 3-B, 4-E, 5-D
B. 2. Do 3. has 4. have 5. doesn't
C. 2. has 3. has 4. have 5. has 6. have
D. 2. Yes, he does. 3. No, he doesn't.
 4. No, I don't. 5. Yes, it does.
 6. Yes, it does.

Chapter 2: Can / Can't

Exercises:

- A.** 2- E, 3-A, 4-B, 5-C
C. 2. Can the lion run ?
 3. Yes, it can. It can't read.
 4. Can the girl swim ?, She can jump.
 5. Can the fish swim ?, Yes, it can. It can't read.
D. 2. Can you play tennis ?
 3. Peter can read a book.
 4. He can't climb trees.
 5. Can birds fly in the sky ?

Chapter 3: Present Continuous ... - ing

Exercises:

- A.** 2. sitting 3. playing 4. jumping
 5. swimming 6. making 7. watching
 8. singing 9. dancing 10. writing
B. 2. He is cooking. 3. You are reading.
 4. It is sleeping. 5. They are playing.
C. 2. sitting 3. singing 4. listening
 5. are 6. writing 7. sleeping
D. 2. We are playing baseball.
 3. She is running in the park.
 4. You are making a model aeroplane.
 5. They are jumping on the sofa.
 6. They are studying English.

Chapter 4: Present Continuous ...

not- ing / - ing ?

Exercises:

- A.** 2. You are not watching T.V.
 3. It is not climbing a tree.
 4. I am not drinking milk.
 5. They are not sleeping in the room.
B. 2. Is David playing Tennis ?
 3. Is it flying in the sky ?
 4. Is she writing a letter ?
 5. Are you sitting on a swing ?
 6. Are they swimming in the pool ?
C. 2. No, it isn't. 3. No, I am not.

4. Yes, the children are.
D. 2. Is she wearing blue pants ?
 3. Tom isn't cooking in the kitchen.
 4. Jane isn't driving a car.
 5. Are you playing soccer ?

Explore Math

Chapter 3: Exercise 2

- B.** 1. 2 2. 5 3. 3 4. 5

Chapter 4 : Exercise 1

- B.** 1. 500 2. 300 3. 9 4. 4 5. 800
 6. 2 7. 600

Exercise 2

- A.** 1. 13 m 32 cm 2. 16 m 16 cm
 3. 31 m 31 cm 4. 97 m 11 cm
 5. 7 m 70 cm 6. 9 m 15 cm

Exercise 3

- A.** 1. 5 m 92 cm 2. 3 m 56 cm
 3. 3 m 84 cm 4. 6 m 15 cm
 5. 0 m 97 cm 6. 4 m 5 cm

Exercise 4

- A.** 1. 14 m 76 cm rope 2. 13 m 99 cm lace
 3. 43 m 84 cm cloth 4. 32 m 11 cm ribbon
 5. Pankaj's brother, 80 cm

Exercise 5

- A.** 2. 1000 g 3. 5370 g 4. 6480g
 5. 9000 g

Exercise 6

- A.** 2. 5000 mg 3. 8400 mg 4. 6700 mg
 5. 7650 mg

Exercise 7

- A.** 1. 51 g 869 mg 2. 58 kg 230 g 3. 22 kg
 160 g
 4. 26 g 700 mg 5. 50 kg 300 g 6. 35 kg
 500 g

Exercise 8

- A.** 1. 14 kg 100 g 2. 9 g 60 mg 3. 21 kg
 980 g 4. 2 kg 800 g 5. 8 kg 800 g
 6. 40 kg 700 g

Exercise 9

- A.** 1. 84 kg 2. 4 kg 800 g 3. 2 kg 920 g
 4. 1 kg 500 g 5. 11 kg 100 g 6. 7 kg
 300 g

Exercise 10

- A.** 2. 3700 ml 3. 4220 ml
 4. 6000 ml 5. 2140 ml
B. 2. 2000 l 3. 5000 l 4. 3500 l



5. 9300 l

Exercise 11

- A.** 2. 45 kl 730 l 3. 27 kl 050 l
4. 73 kl 720 l 5. 33 kl 860 l
- B.** 2. 10 kl 600 l 3. 3 kl 350 l
4. 5 kl 700 l 5. 6 kl 300 l

Exercise 12

- A.** 1. last week. 5 / 300 ml 2. 20l
3. Tuesday, 1 / 250 ml 4. 7 / 50ml
5. 14 / 500 ml 6. 12 / 310 ml

Chapter 5**Exercise 2**

- A.** 1. 4:30 2. 7
o'clock 3. 2:15 4. 10:10
5. 12:30 6. 8:20 7. 11:45

Exercise 3

- A.** 1. May 2. September 3. February
4. 31 days 5. June

Exercise 4

- A.** 1. Saturday 2. Wednesday 3. Wednesday
4. Sunday 5. Tuesday
- B.** 1. Saturday 2. Saturday 3. Tuesday
4. Wednesday 5. Monday

Exercise 5

- A.** 1. 5 2. Tuesday 3. Tuesday
4. Saturday, Sunday, Monday 5. 31 days

Chapter 6**Exercise 2**

- A.** 1. ₹ 20 and 50 p 2. ₹ 14 3. ₹ 51
4. ₹ 605 5. ₹ 75 6. ₹ 12 and 50 p
7. ₹ 22

Exercise 3

- A.** 1. ₹ 15 2. ₹ 50 3. ₹ 4 and 50 p
4. ₹ 8 5. ₹ 480 6. ₹ 500 7. 50 p

Exercise 4

- A.** 1. ₹ 9 and 50 p 2. ₹ 6
3. ₹ 11 4. ₹ 13
5. ₹ 11 6. ₹ 4

Chapter 7**Exercise 1**

- A.** 1. mango 2. 5 3. orange 4. 7 5. 6

Exploring Science**Chapter 1**

- A.** 1. When an object comes in the way of light, it forms a shadow.
2. Sun is important for all things because -
a) Sun gives us heat and light. b) Plants need sunlight to grow. c) The heat of the sun helps

to ripen fruits. d) The sun facilitates water cycle in nature. e) The heat of the sun kills germs cause diseases.

3. Shadows are formed in a direction that is opposite to the source of light.

4. In the morning and in the evening, shadows are longer because the rising sun and the setting sun are seen at a lower level in the sky.

5. Green plants make their own food in the presence of sunlight by taking in carbondioxide and leaving out oxygen.

6. At noon, the shadows are short because the sun is over our head.

- B.** 1. East 2. Sun 3. In the dark

- C.** 1. hot 2. light 3. shadow 4. west
5. opposite 6. sun

- D.** 1. ✓ 2. X 3. ✓ 4. X 5. ✓

- E.** 1.d 2. d 3. a 4. b

- F.** 1. c 2. d 3. a 4. b

Chapter 2

- A.** 1. A small model of the earth is called Globe.

2. The layer of air surrounding the earth is called atmosphere.

3. The places which are covered with sand are called deserts.

4. Air, water and land are necessary to all living creatures to exist on the earth.

5. a) Soil has different sizes and colours.
b) Soil has water.
c) Soil has air too.

- B.** 1. Globe 2. on earth 3. round 4. on the beaches and in deserts

- C.** 1.globe 2. home 3. protect 4. water

- D.** 1. X 2. X 3. ✓ 4. X

- E.** 1.d 2. c

- F.** 1. b 2. a 3. d 4. c

Chapter 3

- A.** 1. Our body is made up of bones and muscles.

2. Bones give shape and support to our body.

3. Every action we make is a result of the action of muscles.

4. Posture is the position in which we sit, stand, bend and walk.

5. We should always keep our body in a proper posture because a) it helps the bones to grow well. b) it makes our backbone strong. c) it makes our body fit and smart.

- B.** 1. 206 2. Bones 3. Joints

- C.** 1. bones and muscles 2. shape and support



3. heart 4. bend our shoulders

D. 1. ✓ 2. ✓ 3. X 4. X

E. 1. c 2. c 3. c

F. 1. e 2. c 3. d 4. b 5. f 6. a

Chapter 4

- A.** 1. Rocks are the elements that are related to earth's crust.
2. Granite, Marble and sand stone are three hard rocks.
3. Coal, chalk and slate are soft rocks.
4. All rocks are made up of minerals.
5. Diamond, sapphire and emerald gemstones are used in jewellery.

B. 1. Graphite 2. Marble 3. Rocks 4. Chalk

C. 1. rocks 2. hard 3. granite 4. hard
5. graphite

D. 1. ✓ 2. X 3. ✓ 4. X 5. ✓

E. 1. c 2. b 3. c

F. 1. c 2. d 3. b 4. a

Chapter 5:

- A.** 1. Food is our basic need. Without food, we cannot survive for a long time.
2. Sugar, rice and potato are the energy giving foods.
3. Fruits, vegetables and nuts protect us from diseases.
4. Healthy ways of eating. a) Wash your hands before and after eating meal. b) Always eat fresh and well cooked food.
5. Pulses help us to grow and build our muscles. They make our teeth and bones strong.

B. 1. Rice 2. Energy-giving foods 3. Protective foods 4. Dinner

C. 1. Protective 2. Energy giving 3. cover
4. lunch

D. 1. ✓ 2. ✓ 3. ✓ 4. X

E. 1. iii 2. i 3. i

F. 1. d 2. c 3. b 4. a

Chapter 6:

- A.** 1. A pucca house is made of steel, bricks and stone.
2. Houses protect us from heat, cold, wind and rain. They also protect us from thieves and wild animals.
3. Houses made of snow are called igloos.

People living in polar areas live in igloos.

4. Tent and house boat are examples of temporary houses.

5. Houseboats are found on lakes.

6. Caravan is house on wheels.

B. 1. Skyscrapers 2. Nomads 3. Tent 4. Igloo

C. 1. Igloo 2. house boat 3. skyscraper 4. tent
5. sloping - roof

D. 1. X 2. X 3. X 4. X 5. X

E. 1. c 2. a 3. a 4. c 5. b

F. i. d ii. e iii. b iv. f v. a vi. c

Chapter 7:

- A.** 1. We should walk on the left side of the road.
2. Before crossing the road, we should first look to our right, then to our left and then again to our right and cross the road only when it is clear.
3. First aid is the help given to the injured before a doctor comes to take care of him.
4. We should cross the road at the zebra crossing.

B. 1. 'GO' 2. 'STOP' 3. 'WAIT'

C. 1. footpath 2. zebra 3. traffic 4. ear

D. 1. ✓ 2. X 3. X 4. ✓

E. 1. b 2. c

Social Studies

Chapter 1

- A.** 1. Trees are the tallest plants.
2. Climbers are the plants having thin and weak stems.
3. Herbs have soft stems.
4. Shrubs look bushy because its branches are very close knit.

B. 1. Shapes 2. deep 3. banyan 4. spinach

C. 1. T 2. F 3. F 4. F

D. 1. banana 2. grass 3. grass 4. rose

E. 1. ii 2. i 3. iv 4. iii

F. 1. neem 2. mehendi 3. Gulmohar 4. shrub
5. cotton 6. pea

Chapter 2

- A.** 1. Cows, horses sheep and hens are called domestic animals.
2. Wild animals live in the forest.
3. Animals move in different ways like some walk, some crawl, some prowl, some swim and some fly.
4. Animals useful to us in many ways. Cows,



buffaloes and goats give milk. Donkeys, horses, elephants and bullocks carry loads.

B. 1. parrots 2. nests 3. communicate 4. tease

C. 1. F 2. F 3. T 4. T

D. 1. E 2. D 3. B 4. A 5. C

E. 1. Jungle 2. water 3. Tables 4. Dogs

Chapter 3

A. 1. The earth has air all around it called the atmosphere.

2. Oceans are the large water bodies of salt water.

3. Plains are fertile because many rivers and streams flow through them.

4. A hill is a high land on the earth but a mountain is very high than a hill.

B. 1. mountains 2. table land 3. Cleanest 4. earth

C. 1.F 2.T 3. F 4. T

D. iv 2. iii 3. ii 4. i

E. 1. lake 2. deserts 3. Peak 4. Ocean 5. Atmosphere

F. 1. i 2. iv 3. iii

Chapter 4

A. 1. Weather gets changed from time to time but season is a particular type of weather remaining same for a long period of time.

2. We use fans, coolers and air conditioners to keep ourselves cool in the summer season.

3. Some times cool and sometimes hot.

4. We get affected by change in seasons. It reflects in our activities, food habits and clothes.

B. 1. weather 2. cotton 3. winter 4. float

C. 1. F 2. T 3. F 4. F

D. summer - 2, 5, 7 winter -1,3, 4 monsoon -1,6,8

E. 1. August 2. flood 3. Shedding leaves 4. weather

F. 1.ii 2.i 3. iii 4. ii

Chapter 5

A. 1. North, South, East and West.

2. I locate important things of my house using simple directions.

3. The sun rises in the East. It helps us to find the four major directions.

4. Map is drawing of a place on a piece of paper.

B. 1. directions 2. sun 3. drawing 4. lower

C. 1. F 2. T 3. T 4. F

D. 1. iv 2. iii 3. i 4. ii

E. 1. west 2. north 3. south 4. east

F. 1. West 2. East 3. South 4. East

Chapter 6

A. 1. We need to travel for our survival.

2. Roadways, Railways, Waterways and Airways.

3. Vehicles move on the road, on the track, in the air and on water.

4. We travel by bus, bicycles, rickshaws, scooter, cars, trams and local trains in a city.

B. 1. transport 2. camel 3. fast 4. fastest

C. 1. F 2. T 3. T 4. T

D. 1. Train 2. Train 3. Boat 4. Rickshaw 5. Bus

E. 1. iii 2. i 3. iv 4. ii

F. 1. Cycle 2. Tonga 3. Steamer 4. Truck 5. Auto 6. Van 7. Aeroplane 8. Rocket

Chapter 7

A. 1. The travelling was difficult for the early man because he did not have any means of travel.

2. The early man started using a wooden frame which looked like sledge and keep loads on it then used animals to pull this frame.

3. The early man saw a round stone rolling down a slope. This gave the idea of making a wheel into his mind.

4. Invention of wheel led to the invention of many machines.

B. 1. different 2. round 3. sledge 4. carried

C. 1. F 2. T 3. F 4. F

D. 1. iii 2. iv 3. i 4. ii

E. 1. Early man carried his own loads.

2. Early man made holes in the centre of round logs.

3. Early man used cart to push or pull to carry heavy loads.

4. Early man saw a round stone rolling down a slope.

F. 1. i 2. iii 3. ii 4. iii

General Knowledge

Chapter 1: Science Sense

a. The Age of Computers:

1. Mouse 2. Speakers 3. Key Board 4. Monitor 5. CPU 6. Printer 7. Web Cam 8. CD Drive

b. Our Modern Helpers:

a. 6 b. 5 c. 4 d. 3 e. 2 f.1



Chapter 2: Our Surroundings

a. "T" for Transport:

1. Train
2. Bus
3. Aeroplane
4. Ship
5. Bicycle
6. Auto
7. Jeep
8. Car

b. They use them:

1. e
2. b
3. h
4. g
5. a
6. f
7. c
8. d

c. Yum..... Yum Very Tasty:

1. Peanut
2. bread
3. Eggs
4. biscuits
5. Cheese
6. Butter
7. Milk
8. Fruits
9. Vegetable
- a. Wheat
- b. Milk
- c. Vegetables
- d. Vegetables

d. Road Signs:

1. Cycle track
2. Left turn
3. Right turn
4. Pedestrian path
5. Speed breaker
6. Men at work
7. School ahead
8. No left turn
9. No right turn.

Chapter 3: Be Sportive

a. Name the Game:

1. Billiards
2. Yatching
3. Wind Surfing
4. Angling
5. Rafting
6. Hang gliding
7. Sky driving
8. Mountain climbing
9. Skying

b. The Icons of Sports:

1. Athletics
2. Hockey
3. Foot ball
4. Weight lifting
5. Cycling
6. Tennis

c. Sports Terms:

1. 2
2. 4
3. 6
4. 5
5. 1

Chapter 4: I Love My India

a. Sight Seeing:

1. Gate way of India, Mumbai
2. Ajanta caves, Madhya Pradesh
3. Lotus temple, Delhi
4. Charminar, Hyderabad
5. Sanchi Stupa, Sanchi(M.P)
6. Victoria Memorial, Kolkata

b. Dresses of India:

1. Punjabi
2. West Bengal
3. Gujarat
4. Uttarpradesh
5. Kashmir
6. Rajasthan
7. Nagaland
8. Maharashtra

- a. Punjabi
- b. Karnataka
- c. Gujarat

c. Indian Food:

1. e
2. f
3. d
4. c
5. b
6. a

d. Sa-Re-Ga-Ma:

1. Flute
2. Piano
3. Clarinut
4. Trumpet
5. Tabala
6. Guitar
7. Harmonium
8. Drum
9. Dholak

e. Great Indians:

1. 6-c
2. 5-a
3. 4-d
4. 3-f
5. 2-b
6. 1-c





ANSWERS (CLASS - 3 / SEMESTER - I)

Now Easy English

Chapter 1 : The landlord's wedding

Reading: 1. Jorgen's daughter; 2. For money and a large piece of land; 3. Trick Katarina into marrying the landlord; 4. "I'm here to fetch what you promised my master."; 5. A white mare. She understood the plan.

Vocabulary: Above-Below; Long-Short; Punish-Reward; Blunt-Sharp; Dwarf-Giant; Peace-War; Deep-Shallow; Pure-Impure.

Grammar: 1. planted flowers; 2. flew the airplane; 3. barked all night long; 4. cut the boy's hair; 5. slept in her crib; 6. fluttered in the wind; 7. ate crickets.

Chapter 2: The Moon and his lake

Reading: 1. Drinking water, bathing and playing; 2. The lake started drying up and there was a water shortage; 3. Finding another lake; 4. They were trampled and some of them died. 5. The lake belongs to the Moon. He wanted to save the other rabbits; 6. Yes.

Vocabulary: 1. Fish-Tank; 2. Pigeon-Coop; 3. Mouse-Burrow; 4. Dog-Kennel.

Grammar: 1. Books, 2. Leaves; 3. Trees; 4. Cars; 5. Tomatoes; 6. Flowers; 7. Scarves; 8. Bells; 9. Houses; 10. Bags; 11. Elves; 12. Dresses.

Spelling: ocean, river, pond, waterfall, oasis.

Chapter 3: The bell of Arti

Reading: 1. They were unfairly treated; 2. Hang a bell in the market so that people could ask for justice; 3. Whenever any person was wronged, they could ring the bell. A judge from the court would come and help the person; 4. Wicked men were frightened and lesser wrongs were done; 5. A man tied a grapevine to the rope; 6. His master was arrested for mistreating him.

Grammar: I: 1. and; 2. but; 3. because; 4. till; 5. or; 6. as well as.

II: 1. are barking; 2. is crying; 3. is travelling; 4. is examining; 5. are listening; 6. is writing.

Pronunciation: 1. Plays; 2. Puppies; 3. Studies; 4. Libraries

Chapter 4: The Wright Brothers

Reading: 1. Wilbur and Orville Wright; 2. When their father gifted them a flying toy; 3. They began making kites in the bicycle shop; 4. They were large kites that flew only on air current; 5. Experimented with man-power airplane flight; 6. Flying a plane on 17th December; 7. Wright Co.; 8. They help people and goods travel fast from one country to another.

Grammar:I: 1. COMPUTER; 2. ORVILLE; 3. MOTOR; 4. AEROPLANE.

II: 1. barking; 2. worked; 3. made; 4. cheered; 5. flew; 6. grew up.

Speaking: machine; tail; flies; takes off; airport; travel; people.

Chapter 5 : Okee Pokee

Reading: 1. Okee Pokee; 2. Okaa Pokaa Ching Ma Ring; 3. She painted the king's back; 4. Accept all answers.

Grammar: 1. Edmund Hillary was the first man to climb the Mount Everest; 2. The Moon is a satellite of the Earth; 3. Christopher Columbus sailed across the Atlantic Ocean; 4. X Mauritius lies close to Africa; 5. We wanted to watch play at the Royal Opera House.

Spelling: 1. SILK; 2. COTTON; 3. SATIN; 4. WOOL; 5. LYCRA.

Pronunciation: 1. sun; 2. saw; 3. road; 4. story; 5. bean.

Chapter 6 : Uncle Tom's Cabin

Reading: A: 1. It is filled with love and warmth; 2. Her cooking; 3. He would play with them, teach them new games, make them wooden toys and whistles; 4. Corn cakes, muffins and pies; 5. To teach him to read, she makes batter cakes and sausages.

B: 1. False; 2. True; 3. True; 4. False.

Vocabulary: 1. has; 2. has; 3. have; 4. has; 5. have; 6. have.

Grammar: 1. bravely; 2. brightly; 3. quietly; 4. quickly; 5. beautifully; 6. carefully.

Spelling: 1. kitten; 2. carrot; 3. sheep; 4. hammer;



5. puppies; 6. bigger.

Listening:

1. continent; 2 rivers; 3. sahara; 4. lion/giraffe/ rhinos/zebra/hippopotamus.

Activity:

1. AMERICA; 2. SRI LANKA; 3. JAPAN; 4. MALAYSIA; 5. INDIA; 6. NEPAL.

Grammar

Chapter 1 : Articles a/ an/ the

Exercises

- A. 2. a watermelon 3. an onion 4. an apple
5. an orange 6. a tomato
- B. 2. It's very hot in the afternoon.
3. I see a cat. The cat is cute !
4. Can you play with piano ? Yes, I can.
5. I have a robot. The robot is blue.
- C. 2. the 3. a 4. a 5. the 6. a
- D an, a, the, a, the

Chapter 2 : Plural Nouns ... -s/ -es/ -ies Exercises

- A. 2. dishes 3. leaves 4. mice 5. fish
- B. 2. dishes 3. monkeys 4. fish 5 women
6. tomatoes
- C. 2. knives 3. men 4. sheep, trees
5. Monkeys, zoo 6. books, desks
- D. 2. The clocks are on the wall.
3. There are three big apple trees.
4. There are benches in the park.
5. The children are at school.

Chapter 3 : Some / Any Exercises

- A. milk,water, cheese, coffee, sugar,meat, butter, tea, salt
- B. 2. any 3. some 4. some 5. some
6. any 7. some 8. any
- C. 2. some 3. any 4. some 5. any 6. any
- D. 2. There are some spoons on the table.
3. There isn't any soup in the bowl.
4. There are some apples in the basket.
5. There aren't any girls in the school.
6. Is there any chance on the plate ?

Chapter 4 : How many / How much Exercises

- A. 3. many 4. much 5. much 6. many
- B. 2. How much 3. How many 4. How much

- C. 2. How many apples
3. How much lemon juice
4. How many eggs
5. How much butter
6. How many bowls
7. How much meat

Explore Math

Chapter 1 : Exercise 1

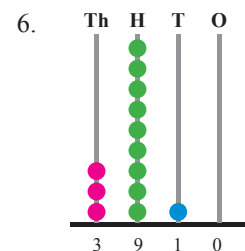
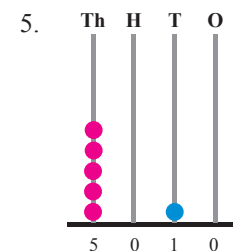
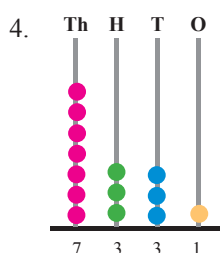
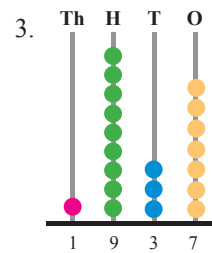
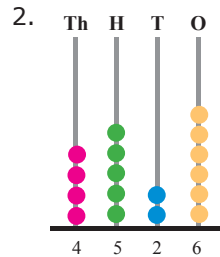
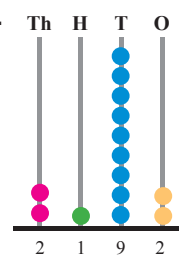
- A. 2. 1 ten 5 ones 2. 1 ten 8 ones
- B. 1. 216 2. 785 3.206 4. 422 5. 625 6.502
- C. 1. 253 – tens 2.725 – ones 3. 459 – tens
4. 195 – ones 5.532 – hundreds
6. 580 – hundreds
- D. 1. 305=300 + 0 + 5 2. 279 = 200 + 70 + 9
3. 519 = 500 + 10 + 9 4. 200 = 200 + 0 + 0
5. 999 = 900 + 90 + 9 6.724 = 700 + 20 + 4

Chapter 2 : Exercise 1

- A. 1. 1393, 1395, 1396, 2. 2323, 2324, 2325
3. 4180, 4181, 4182, 4183,
4. 5224, 5225, 5226, 5227, 5.6146, 6147,
6148, 6149
- B. 1 - d, 2 - c, 3 - e, 4 - a, 5 - b

Exercise 2

- B. 1. 1000 2. 9999 3. 1111 4. 5000
- C. 1.





- D. 1. 2110 – Two thousand one hundred and ten
 2. 4315 – Four thousand three hundred and fifteen
 3. 5215 – Five thousand two hundred and fifteen
 4. 6309 – Six thousand three hundred and nine
 5. 3385 – Three thousand three hundred and eighty five
 6. 2179 – Two thousand one hundred and seventy nine

- E. 1. 5203 2. 8909 3. 6107 4. 5055
 5. 1010

- F. 2. $7000 + 100 + 80 + 2$
 3. $4000 + 800 + 50 + 2$
 4. $9000 + 200 + 80 + 9$
 5. $1000 + 900 + 90 + 9$

- G. 2. 1107 3. 6499 4. 3033 5. 2827

- H. 2. 6 3. 80 4. 2 5. 60

Exercise 3

- A. 1. $>$ 2. $<$ 3. $=$ 4. $<$ 5. $<$ 6. $>$

Exercise 4

- A. 1. $>$ 2. $<$ 3. $>$ 4. $>$ 5. $<$ 6. $<$ 7. $<$
 8. $<$ 9. $<$ 10. $<$

- B. 2. Ascending order: 6091, 6109, 6190, 6910
 Descending order: 6910, 6190, 6109, 6091
 3. Ascending order: 1927, 2176, 2345, 3124
 Descending order: 3124, 2345, 2176, 1927
 4. Ascending order: 2896, 2986, 3210, 3910
 Descending order: 3910, 3210, 2986, 2896
 5. Ascending order: 1100, 1700, 1800, 1900
 Descending order: 1900, 1800, 1700, 1100

- C. 1. P - 1909, S - 1911
 2. P - 2758, S - 2760
 3. P - 2799, S - 2801
 4. P - 4370, S - 4372

Exercise 5

- A. 1. 2322, 4796 B. 1. 4931, 4657

Exercise 6

- A. 1. Place value - 20, Face value - 2
 2. Place value - 900, Face value - 9
 3. Place value - 4, Face value - 4
 4. Place value - 1000, Face value - 1
 5. Place value - 100, Face value - 1

Chapter 3 : Exercise 1

- A. 1. XXV 2. XXXII 3. XI 4. LXXIII
 5. LVI 6. XLIX 7. LXIV 8. LXXXV
 B. 1. 7 2. 4 3. 15 4. 38 5. 40 6. 50
 C. $6 - 4 = 2$
 D. 1. VIII 2. XXXI 3. VII 4. XCV
 5. XXVIII

Chapter 4 : Exercise 1

- A. 2. $193 + 129$ 3. $142 + 715$
 4. $315 + 436$ 5. $96 + 871$
 B. 2. 218 3. 315 4. 935 5. 0
 C. 1. 398 2. 194 3. 420 4. 1 5. 48

Exercise 2

- A. 1. 77 2. 82 3. 62 4. 71 5. 90
 6. 83 7. 82 8. 75 9. 96 10. 84

Exercise 3

- A. 1. 668 2. 948 3. 765 4. 936 5. 815
 6. 378

Exercise 4

- A. 1. 9890 2. 6895 3. 5372 4. 9561
 B. 1. 8411 2. 4912 3. 8912 4. 7631
 C. 1. 5281 2. 9217 3. 6623 4. 4525
 D. 1. 8658 2. 6591 3. 5353 4. 7478
 5. 4081

Exercise 5

- A. 1. 3488 2. 3230 3. 4830

Chapter 5 : Exercise 1

- A. 1. 210 2. 158 3. 398 4. 0 5. 213
 B. 1. 1 2. 0 3. 491 4. 0 5. 1

Exercise 2

- A. 1. 14 2. 28 3. 31 4. 34 5. 26 6. 14
 B. 1. 20 2. 55 3. 73 4. 43

Exercise 3

- A. 1. 204 2. 351 3. 501 4. 162
 5. 131 6. 412 7. 412 8. 20

Exercise 4

- A. 1. 9 2. 6 3. 87 4. 36 5. 14
 6. 48 7. 23 8. 48 9. 613

Exercise 5

- A. 1. 4546 2. 3420 3. 2876 4. 6278
 5. 3667 6. 2134

Exercise 6

- A. 1. ₹ 933 2. ₹ 1641 3. 130 days
 4. 2152 5. 7503

Exercise 7

- A. 1. 625 2. 1298 3. 190 4. 1350



Chapter 6 : Exercise 1

- A.** Factors Products
 1. 7,4 28
 2. 5,6 30
 3. 2,8 16
 4. 9,7 63
 5. 1,8 8

- B.** 1. $6 \times 6 = 36$ 2. $8 + 8 + 8 + 8 + 8 = 40$
 3. $3 \times 3 = 9$ 4. $5 \times 0 = 0$ 5. 4×5

Exercise 2

- A.** 1. 2, 10 2. 4, 28 3. 5, 45 4. 4, 24
 5. 3, 24 6. 9, 18

- B.** 1. 0 2. 0 3. 19 4. 0 5. 9 6. 0

Exercise 3

- A.** 1. 70 2. 50 3. 250 4. 1200 5. 1900
 6. 200 7. 90 8. 100 9. 20 10. 400

- B.** 1. 60 2. 200 3. 210 4. 540 5. 50
 6. 600 7. 2800 8. 1800 9. 4800 10. 1000

- C.** 1. 10 2. 100 3. 10 4. 100 5. 530
 6. 36 7. 7 8. 100

Exercise 4

- A.** 1. 1776 2. 986 3. 2666 4. 2482
 5. 1485 6. 1292

- B.** 1. 7035 2. 20412 3. 25335 4. 35856
 5. 15563 6. 23408

Exercise 5

- A.** 1. 1925 2. 3600 3. 456 4. 360
 5. 43350 6. 1785 7. 98901 8. 35834

Chapter 7 : Exercise 1

- A.** 1. 4 2. 3 3. 3 4. 6

- B.** 2. 4 3. 5 4. 2 5. 3

Exercise 2

- A.** 1. 6 2. 8 3. 4

Exercise 3

- A.** 1. 212 2. 115 3. 110 4. 132 5. 75
 6. 53 7. 367 8. 85

- B.** 1. 408 2. 436 3. 414 4. 901 5. 1111
 6. 281

Exercise 4

- A.** 1. Q = 61, R = 2 2. Q = 241, R = 1
 3. Q = 112, R = 1 4. Q = 41, R = 1
 5. Q = 243, R = 3 6. Q = 104, R = 1
 7. Q = 189, R = 2 8. Q = 1094, R = 1
 9. Q = 726, R = 1 10. Q = 435, R = 4

Exercise 5

- A.** 1. Q = 3, R = 0 2. Q = 3, R = 21
 3. Q = 5, R = 4 4. Q = 11, R = 2
 5. Q = 13, R = 3 6. Q = 11, R = 5
 7. Q = 66, R = 18 8. Q = 235, R = 1
 9. Q = 99, R = 11 10. Q = 331, R = 5

Exercise 6

- A.** 1. Q = 7, R = 5 2. Q = 16, R = 0
 3. Q = 49, R = 5 4. Q = 13, R = 94
 5. Q = 2, R = 57

- B.** 1. Q = 129, R = 0 2. Q = 132, R = 5
 3. Q = 113, R = 2 4. Q = 249, R = 0
 5. Q = 13, R = 20 6. Q = 48, R = 12

- C.** 1. Y 2. N 3. N 4. N

Exercise 7

- A.** 1. 16 2. 41 3. 59 4. 54 5. 60

Exploring Science

Chapter 1 : Living and Non-living Things

- A.** 1. Living things breathe, move, grow, feel, reproduce and need food.
 2. Living things move from one place to another in search of food, water, shelter and also to protect themselves from enemies.
 3. Non-living things cannot breathe, move, grow, feel or reproduce. They do not need food.
 4.

Living Things	Non-Living Things
i. They can breathe.	i. They cannot breathe.
ii. They require food to grow.	ii. They do not require food.
iii. They have life cycle.	iii. They do not have life cycle.
iv. They show movement.	iv. They cannot move.
v. They can feel.	v. They cannot feel.
vi. They can reproduce.	vi. They cannot reproduce.

5. Plants make their own food by using air, water and sunlight. This process is known as photosynthesis.
 6. Human beings breathe in oxygen and breathe out carbon dioxide using nose, mouth and lungs.
B. 1. Photosynthesis is the process by which plants make their own food by using air, water and sunlight.
 2. No, because it is a non-living thing.
 3. Book, computer, clothes etc., are man made non-living things.
C. 1. Air 2. Sunlight 3. Stomata 4. food 5. eggs
 6. sense organs
D. 1. ✓ 2. ✗ 3. ✗ 4. ✗ 5. ✓
E. 1. b 2. c
F. 1. b 2. a 3. d 4. e 5. c



Chapter 2 : Plants and Animals

A. 1.

Animals	Plants
i. Animals move from one place to another.	i. Plants cannot move from one place to another.
ii. Animals breathe in oxygen and breathe out carbondioxide.	ii. Plants breathe in carbondioxide and breathe out oxygen.
iii. Animals cannot prepare their own food.	iii. Plants prepare their own food.
iv. Animals can give birth to young ones.	iv. Plants cannot give birth to young ones.
v. Animals have many organ systems.	v. Plants do not have any organ system.
vi. Animals have sense organs.	vi. Plants do not have sense organs.

2. Animals move from one place to another in search of food, water and shelter. They also move to protect themselves from their enemies.

3. Photosynthesis is the proces by which green plants use sunlight, water and carbondioxide to produce their food.

4. Plants breathe in carbondioxide from air and breathe out oxygen into the air through the stomata present under their leaves.

5. Animals produce their own kind by either giving birth to young ones or by laying eggs.

B. 1. Due to the presence of Chlorophyll.

2. Plants breathe in carbondioxide.

3. Animals breathe out carbondioxde from their lungs.

4. Fishes breathe through gills.

C. 1. Stomata 2. movement 3. food

4. breathing 5. plants

D. 1. X 2. ✓ 3. X 4. ✓ 5. ✓

E. 1. a 2. b 3. c 4. d 5. a

F. 1. a 2. c 3. b

Chapter 3 : Parts of Plants

A. 1. Shoot is the part of a plant that grows above the ground.

2. There are two types of roots-tap root and fibrous root.

3. Plants like rice, wheat, grass have fibrous roots.

4. A green leaf needs water, carbon dioxide and

sunlight to prepare food.

5. Plants like beet root, carrot and radish have taproots.

B. 1. Root holds the soil and prevent it from being washed away.

2. Hard, strong and woody stem is called trunk.

3. Potato, ginger and sugarcane stores extra food

in their stems.

4. Cabbage stores food in its leaves.

5. Shoot grows upwards, towards the sunlight.

C. 1. root 2. upright 3. Lamina 4. fruits

D. 1. ✓ 2. ✓ 3. X 4. ✓

E. 1. a 2. d 3.d 4.d 5.b

F. 1.e 2. a 3.b 4.c 5. d

Chapter 4 : Food Habits of Animals

A. 1. Snakes and frogs swallow their food as a whole.

2. Animals which eat plants as well as flesh of other animals are called omnivores.

3. The cow and buffalo first swallow the food without chewing. After sometime, they bring the food back into the mouth from their stomach and begins to chew. This is called chewing the cud.

4. Carnivores have long pointed teeth called canines and strong grinding teeth called molars.

5. Herbivorous animals eat grass, small plants, twigs, branches of trees, fruits and vegetables.

6. a. Snakes and frogs swallow their food in one piece. b. Mosquitoes, butterflies, honey bees and leeches suck their food.

B. 1. The sense of smell in dogs is very strong.

2. Donkey and camel are called beasts of burden.

3. a) Cow, goat, horse etc., are plant eating animals.

b) Tiger and lion are flesh eating animals.

4. Hyenas and Jackals are scavengers.

5. Animals need food for energy.

C. 1. tear 2. scavengers 3. food 4. leech 5. swallow

D. 1. X 2. ✓ 3. ✓ 4. X 5. ✓ 6. ✓

E. 1. a, c 2. a 3. c

F. 1. e 2. d 3. c 4. b 5. a



Chapter 5 : Birds: Feathers and Nesting Habits

- A. 1. Streamlined body, hallow bones, feathers attached with the wings and tail feathers help the birds to fly.
2. Birds have two kinds of feathers. They are down feather, flight feather.
3. Birds build nest when they have to lay eggs.
4. The penguin collects a few pebbles and stones to make its nest on the ground.
- B. 1. Birds lay eggs to produce their young ones.
2. Feathers help birds to catch them in air to flight and to change its direction.
3. Penguins build their nests on the ground.
4. Hallow bones help the birds to float in air.
- C. 1. Birds 2. hallow and light 3. wings 4. koel
- D. 1. ✗ 2. ✓ 3. ✗ 4. ✗
- E. 1. (a),(b), (c) 2. (d) 3. (d)
- F. 1.b 2. a 3. d 4. c 5. e

Chapter 6 : Birds : Beaks and Claws

- A. 1. Swallows have broad and short beaks which are sticky from inside. When Swallows keep their beaks open small insects and flies stick to the beak and the bird swallows them up.
2. Birds use their beaks to hold and eat their food.
3. Birds which hunt and eat other animals are called birds of prey. **Ex.** Eagle, Vulture.
4. Ducks catch insects, worms and water plants from the muddy water. The muddy water with mud flows out through the holes present in the beak of a duck and the food like insects, worms etc., are left inside the beak.
5. Birds use their feet to move, catch food and protect themselves from enemies and claws are used to judge the living habits of the birds.
6. Sparrow and crow are the two well known perching birds.
- B. 1. Different birds have different beaks. Shaped and designed in such a way that they can eat food of their liking.
2. Curved beak of parrots helps them crack seeds, nuts and fruits. Also helps while climbing up the trees.
3. Sun birds have long and pointed beaks.
- C. 1. water 2. chisel 3. scratching 4. beak 5. webbed
- D. 1. ✓ 2. ✓ 3. ✓ 4. ✗

- E. 1. a 2. d
F. 1. d 2. e 3.c 4. b 5. a

Chapter 7 : Rocks, Soil and Minerals

- A. 1. Pebbles are smooth and round stones that are found in or near water.
2. Soil exist in three layers.
- 1. Top soil :** The top soil is upper most layer. It is dark in colour.
- 2. Sub soil :** It lies below the top soil. It is light in colour.
- 3. Bedrock :** The bottom layer is made of solid rock called the bedrock.
3. There are three types of rocks. They are Igneous rocks, Sedimentary rocks, Metamorphic rocks.
4. Weather plays an important role in the process breaking up of rocks. Rocks get heated during day and cool down at night. This heating and cooling breaks down rocks into smaller pieces.
5. Rocks formed due to the deposition of sand, clay and pebbles at the bottom of sea, river and other water bodies over thousands of years are called sedimentray rocks.
- Eg:** Sand stone and lime stone.
- B. 1. The term igneous means fire.
2. A mixture of molten rock and gases present in the central part or core of the earth is called magma.
3. Lava means a hot molten rock.
4. Pumice is an igneous rock.
5. Sandstone is a sedimentary rock.
- C. 1. gravel 2. cracks 3. soil 4. sandstone 5. metamorphic, rocks
- D. 1. ✗ 2. ✗ 3. ✗ 4. ✓ 5. ✗
- E. 1. d 2. c 3. d

Social Studies

Chapter 1 : The Earth

- A. a. Atmosphere means mixture of gases that surround the Earth.
b. The earth is a beautiful planet. It is round in shape.
c. A natural luminous body visible in the sky especially at night is known as star.
d. Coast is a place where the land and sea meet.



- B. 1. People were afraid to travel too far in the past because they had the opinion that the Earth was flat and had edges.
 2. Ferdinand Magellan proved that the Earth is round.
 3. The place where the land and sky appear to meet is called the horizon.
 4. The planets according to increase distance from the sun are Mercury, Venus, Earth, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus and Neptune.
 5. The life exists on the Earth because it is the home of all living things.
- C. 1. living 2. water 3. Spain 4. horizon 5. planets

- D. 1. T 2. F 3. F 4. F 5. F
 E. 1. iii 2. v 3. iv 4. i 5. ii
 F. Venus, Jupiter, Mars
 G. 1. iii 2. i 3. iii 4. ii 5. iii

Chapter 2 : Continents and Oceans

- A. a. Atlas is a book of maps.
 b. Map is a drawing of the earth or a part of it.
 c. One of the large land mass of the earth is known as continent.
 d. Trench is a long deep hole dug in the ground.
- B. 1. i) Globe is not big enough to represent all the places in detail. ii) We cannot use very big globe as it is difficult to carry.
 2. A map which can hang on a wall is known as wall map.
 3. Globe is difficult to carry but a map is easy to carry.
 4. The sailors use magnetic compass to find out direction.
 5. Asia is the largest continent.
- C. 1. Globe 2. map 3. North 4. Arctic 5. blue
 D. 1. F 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. T
 E. 1. CY 2. O 3. C 4. CY 5. CY 6. O 7. C 8. O
 F. 1. iv 2. iii 3. i 4. v 5. ii

Formative Assessment

- G. 1. ii 2. iii 3. iv 4. iv 5. i

Chapter 3 : Our Country India

- A. a. Mountain is a very high hill.
 b. Plains are flat and level lands.
 c. An area of flat land that is higher than the land around it is known as plateau.
 d. Desert is a large area of land covered with sand.

- B. 1. North - The great Himalayas
 South - The Indian Ocean
 East - The Arabian Sea
 West - The Bay of Bengal
 2. The great plains of India thickly populated because the land fertile and rich.
 3. A plateau is an area of flat land that is higher than the land around it but an island is a piece of land surrounded by water.
 4. Thar desert covers most part of Rajasthan.
 5. The Lakshadweep island and The Andaman and Nicobar islands.
- C. 1. Cone 2. Himalayas 3. South 4. Rainfed 5. desert
 D. 1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. F
 E. 1. iii 2. v 3. i 4. ii 5. iv
 F. 1. Terai 2. Desert 3. Everest 4. Peninsula 5. Plains
 G. iv 2. iv 3. ii 4. i 5. iii

Chapter 4 : States of India

- A. a. Government elected to govern the whole country is known as Central Government.
 b. Government elected to govern a particular state is known as State Government.
 c. An area which look after by the Central Government is called as Union Territory.
- B. 1. Indian territory extends from Kashmir in the north to Kanyakumari in the South and from Gujarat in the west to Arunachal Pradesh in the east.
 2. There not be one government in India because it is a vast country and it is difficult for a single government to fulfil the needs and aspirations of such a big population.
 3. The State Government to look after the welfare of the people of that state.
 4. The Union Territories are governed by the Central Government. 5. The Capital of Jammu and Kashmir is Srinagar in summer and Jammu in Winter.
- C. 1. Central 2. west 3. difficult 4. representatives 5. Kanya Kumari
 D. 1. F 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. F
 E. 1. iv 2. i 3. v 4. ii 5. iii
 F. 1. iii 2. ii 3. i 4. i 5. iii

Chapter 5 : Our Food

- A. a. Wheat, rice, maize, Jowar and bajra are known as food grains.
b. Seeds of beans, peas, lentils are called as pulses.
c. People who do not eat eggs, meat or fish are known as vegetarians.
d. People who eat eggs, meat, fish and vegetables are known as Non-vegetarians.
- B. 1. The food consumed in different parts of the country depends on the climate and soil of the place.
2. i. People generally eat wheat in the northern states of India.
ii. Rice is common in the eastern and southern states of India like West Bengal, Odisha, Andhra Pradesh, Karnataka, Tamil Nadu and Kerala.
iii. Wheat, Jowar and Bajra are commonly eaten in Rajasthan.
3. Chillies, Cloves, Turmeric and Pepper.
4. Carrots, peas and grapes grow in winter. Mangoes, watermelons and litchis are only available in summer.
5. People who eat eggs, meat, fish are known as Non-vegetarians but people who do not eat eggs, meat and fish are called vegetarians.
- C. 1. soil 2. Rajasthan 3. Oil 4. West Bengal
5. Vegetarians.
- D. 1. F 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. F
- E. 1. iv 2. iii 3. v 4. i 5. ii
- F. 1. Vegan 2. Sandesh 3. Haldi 4. Nagpur
5. Ratnagiri

Chapter 6 : Our Dresses

- A. a. Turban is scarf wound around the head or around a cap.
b. Long woollen kurta worn by men and women of Kashmir is known as Phiran.
c. Lungi worn by men and women of Kerala is known as Mundu.
d. Angrakha means short Jacket like shirt worn over dhoti by men.
- B. 1. Indian people wore different types of dresses in different regions because it is a country known for diversity.
2. Saree, Salwar-Kameez, trousers, shirts and skirts.

3. Dhoti-kurta, kurta - pyjama and kurta - churidar are popular in most of eastern and northern states.
4. Indian women wear saree differently in different states. Infact, the way a saree is dropped or tied tells us the state the woman belongs to.
5. In Nagaland, many tribes can be recognised by the designs, stripes and colours of their shawls.

- C. 1. Punjab 2. Lungi 3. Truban 4. dress
5. popular
- D. 1. T 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. F
- E. 1. iv 2. iii 3. i 4. v 5. ii
- F. 1. T-shirt 2. lungi 3. phiran 4. saree 5. salwar kameez
- G. 1. Salwar - Kameez 2. Pyjama-Angraka
3. saree 4. Jeans - T-shirt 5. Makhala - Chador
- H. 1. iii 2. i 3. iv 4. iii 5. ii

Chapter 7 : Our Festivals

- A. a. Constitution is a body of principles according to which a country is governed.
b. A festival which reflects the traditions of different religious and ways of living of different people.
c. Samadhi is a burial place.
- B. 1. Religious festivals are celebrated by the people of different religions.
2. We celebrate Independence Day on 15th August every year because we got independence from British rule on this day in 1957.
3. Gurupurab celebrated to mark the birthday of the sikh gurus.
4. Muslims offer prayers or namaz at mosques and they embrace each other and exchange greetings saying 'Id Mubarak' on Id-ul-Fiter.
5. Bihu is celebrated three times in a year but Onam is celebrated once in a year.
- C. 1. republic 2. sacrifices 3. winter 4. diyas
5. teacher
- D. 1. T 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. F
- E. 1. iv 2. v 3. ii 4. i 5. iii
- F. 1. Langar 2. President 3. Pongal 4. Bhangra
5. Gulal
- G. 1. iv 2. i 3. ii 4. iii 5. ii



Chapter 8 : Our Occupations

- A. a. Occupation is a work does to earn money.
 b. A large tract of land covered by trees is known as forest.
 c. Mining signifies digging minerals out of the earth.
 d. Poultry means rearing hens, ducks and geese.
- B. 1. We need to work for food, to wear clothes and a house to live in.
 2. Bullocks, goats, cows and buffaloes.
 3. Most people living in forests collect useful things like rubber, gum and some herbs.
 4. Factories are important for us for the development of a country.
 5. People working in transport services help us to transport the people and goods from one place to another.
- C. 1. Money 2. season 3. ploughing 4. fishing 5. mining
- D. 1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T
- E. 1. iv 2. v 3. i 4. ii 5. iii
- F. 1. Forests 2. Factory 3. Occupation 4. Mining
- G. 1. iv 2. i 3. iii 4. i 5. iii

Chapter 9 : Means of Transport

- A. a. The means which carry people and goods from one place to another by land is land transport.
 b. The means which carry people and goods from one place to another by air is called Air transport.
 c. The means which carry people and goods from one place to another by water is called water transport.
 d. Passport is an identity proof of a person of country.
- B. 1. We choose our means of transport depends on the distance to be travelled.
 2. Car, buses, autos, motor cycles and bicycles are commonly used in cities.
 3. A camel is called the 'ship of the desert' because it is used to carry people and pull carts in deserts.
 4. Water transport is the cheapest than air transport.
 5. Air transport covers big distances in few hours and it is the fastest means of transport. So, air transport shrunk the world.

- C. 1. nearby 2. bullock cart 3. Trains 4. hilly 5. distance
- D. 1. F 2. T 3. T 4. T 5. T
- E. 1. ii 2. v 3. iv 4. i 5. iii
- F. 1. rickshaw 2. train 3. train 4. bicycle 5. trolley
- G. 1. Camel 2. Elephant 3. Helicopter 4. Port 5. Train
- H. 1. i 2. ii 3. iii 4. ii

General Knowledge

Chapter 1 :

a) Tell My Name

- 1) Platypus 2) Emu 3) Kiwi
 4) Walrus 5) Penguins 6) Black buck

b) Fishy World

- 1) Dolphin 2) Puffer Fish 3) Shark
 4) Octopus 5) Gold Fish 6) Eel
 7) Star Fish 8) Cod Fish

c) Reptiles

- 1) Turtle 2) Snake 3) Crocodile
 4) Lizard 5) Tortoise 6) Chameleon
 Can You Name ? : Alligator

d) Our Birdie Friends

- 1) 2, Parrot 2) 6, Pigeon 3) 1, Crane
 4) 3, Cuckoo 5) 4, Road Runner
 6) 5, Pelican 7) 7, Nightingale 8) 8, Quetzal

e) Beaks and Claws

- 1) c 2) d 3) f 4) e 5) b 6) a

f) Heads and Hooves

- 1) f 2) e 3) d 4) c 5) b 6) a

g) They Work For Us

- 1) 6 2) 5 3) 4 4) 3 5) 2 6) 1

h) Amazing Animals

- 1) 8 2) 1 3) 3 4) 5 5) 4 6) 7 7) 2 8) 6

i) Animals in Groups

- 1) flock 2) herd 3) lilter 4) shoal
 5) school 6) swarm 7) brood 8) pride

j) Dinosaurs

- 1) T 2) T 3) F 4) T 5) T 6) T
 7) T 8) T 9) F

Chapter 2 :

a) Varieties of a Plant

- 1) 7 - a 2) 6 - b 3) 5 - c 4) 4 - d
 5) 3 - e 6) 2 - f 7) 1 - g

b) They Grow More Here...

- 1) Swamps 2) Coast 3) Hills and Mountains
 4) Desert 5) Desert 6) Plains
 7) Sea 8) Fresh Water

c) Trees : Our Best Friends

- 1) Fruits 2) Vegetables 3) Flowers

- 4) Paper 5) Cotton 6) Medicines
- 7) Wood 8) Food grains 9) Rubber

d) Spicy .. Spicy .. Beverages

- 1) Cloves 2) Coriander 3) Tea Leafs
- 4) Black pepper 5) Coffee beans
- 6) Ginger 7) Chillies 8) Turmeric

Chapter 3 : Science and Sense

a) Our Body

- 1) Skin 2) Nose 3) Ear
- 4) Mouth 5) Heart 6) Tongue
- 7) Elbow 8) Thumb 9) Brain
- 10) Intenstine 11) Nerve 12) Vein
- 13) Nail 14) Lungs 15) Stomach
- 16) Head

b) The Body System

- 1) 4 2) 3 3) 6 4) 2 5) 5
- 6) 1

c) The Rocks

- 1) Marble 2) Grey rock 3) Granite
- 4) Diamond 5) Chalk 6) Graphite
- 7) Talc 8) Molten rock

d) In the Lap of Nature

- 1) Mountain 2) Water fall 3) Hills
- 4) River 5) Desert 6) Valley
- 7) Plateau 8) Lake

e) The Universe

- 1) Jupiter 2) Stars 3) Mars
- 4) Pluto 5) Saturn 6) Pluto

f) Eat Healthy Food

- 1) B 2) P 3) E 4) B 5) B
- 6) E 7) P 8) B 9) B 10) E
- 11) E 12) E

g) Bright Sparks

- 1) 6 2) 5 3) 4 4) 3 5) 2
- 6) 1





ANSWERS (CLASS - 3/ SEMESTER - II)

Now Easy English

Chapter 1 : Queer Creatures of the Deep

Reading:

1. strange creatures; 2. rose; 3. Japan, Australia; 4. jelly; 5. it thrusts one of the stingers; 6. the hermit crab; 7. octopus.

Grammar:

1. bee; 2. owl; 3. lion; 4. snail; 5. lamb; 6. fox.

Writing:

oceans; mammals; schools; sea; ships; leap; somersaults; sailors; lucky; Voyage.

Listening:

Kettles-hiss; Old stairs-creak; Bees-buzz; Thunder-rumbles; Bells-peal; Water-gurgle; Raindrops-pitter patter.

Chapter 2: The Elves and the Shoemaker

Reading:

- A. 1. Make a pair of shoes; 2. He had money to buy new leather; 3. A pair of fine leather shoes; 4. To see who was making the shoes; 5. Because they helped them make shoes; 6. Because they had enough money to buy leather.
- B. 1. he was very poor; 2. those fit him perfectly; 3. they were happy with the clothes and shoes the shoemaker and his wife made.

Vocabulary:

1. truthful; 2. buyers; 3. fret; 4. excited; 5. stunned; 6. dwarves.

Grammar:

1. below; 2. beneath; 3. above; 4. outside; 5. inside; 6. beside.

Chapter 3 : Dreams

Reading:

1. Fairyland; 2. Because it is beautiful; 3. Noble knights and ladies; 4. Accept all answers.

Grammar:

- A. 1. inside; 2. upstairs; 3. back; 4. anywhere.
- C. 1. carefully; 2. patiently; 3. loudly; 4. dangerously; 5. quietly; 6. slowly.

Chapter 4: Jawaharlal Nehru

Reading:

- Allahabad, Motilal Nehru, Swaroop Rani;
- Harrow and Cambridge; 3. Joined the freedom struggle;
- For protesting against the unfair rule of the British; 5. He became Prime Minister of independent India;
- Chacha Nehru, because he loved children.

Vocabulary:

- you're; 2. they're; 3. can't; 4. doesn't; 5. we're; 6. should've; 7. hasn't; 8. don't.

Grammar:

- She was not crying; 2. Mohan and Sohi are not together; 3. Mr. Tom is not watering his plants; 4. The dog is not digging a hole; 5. I have not finished my homework; 6. Tina is not singing at the concert tomorrow.

Pronunciation:

knee; knock; knit; hour; humble; team; spread; burn; people; guess; laugh.

Chapter 5 : The Giant's Garden

Reading:

- He wouldn't let the children play in the garden; 2. Because the giant didn't not allow the children inside; 3. People will be punished for entering a property without permission; 4. Sad; 5. The children had brought spring into his garden; 6. Because a child could not climb up a tree; 7. He was kind to the children and gave them cookies.

Vocabulary:

1. trespassers, prosecuted, sighs; 2. winter; unpleasant; 3. awfully; 4. bleak.

Grammar:

- beautiful; 2. wonderful; 3. happy; 4. ugly; 5. kind.

Pronunciation

Frame-Same; Snake-Rake; Me-Ski; Brush-Flush; Light-Kite; Corn-Horn; Fly-Sky; Scoop-Swoop; Fruit-Suit; Fall-Ball.

Listening:

- India, South Africa; 2. South Africa; 3. Four; 4. Nehru to Peterson; 5. Yells in joy.

Chapter 6 : The Blindmen and the Elephant

Reading:

- The blind men and the elephant, John Godfrey



Saxe; 2. Ivory, near the trunk; 3. They are like a spears; 4. To a spear; 5. Accept all reasonable answers.

Vocabulary:

1. do; 2. make; 3. make; 4. make; 5. make; 6. do; 7. make; 8. make; 9. do; 10. make.

Listening:

1. sparrows; 2. nests; 3. a reddish back and a black bib; 4. brown back with a stripe on the eye; 5. seeds, small invertebrates, crumbs, etc.

Grammar

Chapter 1 : Exclamations !

Exercises

- A. 2. How 3. What 4. How 5. How 6. What
- B. 2. How fast he runs !
 - 3. What a handsome boy !
 - 4. What big trees !
 - 5. How is the wonderful show !
 - 6. How short I am !
- C. 2. How the funny toy !
 - 3. What a big rat !
 - 4. How the tall girl !
- D. 1. How sad the movie is !
 - 2. How cold milk is !
 - 3. How cute baby is !
 - 4. What a beautiful flower !
 - 5. What a exciting game is !
 - 6. What tall trees !

Chapter 2 : Possessives 's/s'

Exercises

- A. 2. It is Mr. Smith's bag.
 - 3. These are the girls hat's.
 - 4. It is Eric's bicycle.
 - 5. This is the dog's house.
- B. Michael's, Sarah's, Whose, Sam's, Barber shop's
- C. 2. The windows of the school.
 - 3. The root of the house.
 - 4. The nose of the elephant.
- D. 2. Martin's dog is cute and smart.
 - 3. The door of the house is red.
 - 4. It is my mother and father's car.
 - 5. The policemen's uniforms are great.
 - 6. Jenny's pants are in the closet.

Chapter 3 : Possessive Adjectives

my / your / our

Exercises

- A. 2. our 3. it's 4. your 5. his 6. Her 7. Their
- B. 1. C 2. E 3. A 4. B 5. D
- C. 2. Her name is Julie.
 - Her favourite fruit is apple.
 - 3. His name is Bob.
 - His favourite drink is milk.
 - 4. Her name is Wendy.
 - Her favourite snack is cake.
 - 5. Their names are Ann and Mike.
 - Their favourite snack is burger.
- D. 1. It's 2. Their 3. Her 4. my 5. our
 - 6. your

Chapter 4 : Question Words ... who / what/ where

Exercises

- A. 1. C 2. E 3. A 4. F 5. B 6. D
- B. 1. Which 2. How much 3. Why
 - 4. How 5. Where 6. Whose
- C. 2. Why 3. Whose 4. Where 5. What 6. How
 - 7. When 8. Which 9. How many
 - 10. How much

Explore Math

Chapter 1 : Exercise 1

- C.** 1. $\frac{2}{4}$ 2. $\frac{4}{10}$ 3. $\frac{1}{2}$ 4. $\frac{3}{4}$ 5. $\frac{3}{8}$
- D.** 1. $S - \frac{1}{2}$ U - $\frac{1}{2}$ 2. $S - \frac{4}{9}$ U - $\frac{5}{9}$
 - 3. $S - \frac{3}{4}$ U - $\frac{1}{4}$
 - 4. $S - \frac{5}{11}$ U - $\frac{6}{11}$ 5. $S - \frac{2}{4}$ U - $\frac{2}{4}$

Exercise 2

- A.** 1. $\frac{4}{5}$ 2. $\frac{8}{9}$ 3. $\frac{6}{11}$ 4. $\frac{5}{6}$ 5. $\frac{5}{7}$ 6. $\frac{3}{4}$
- B.** 1. > 2. > 3. > 4. > 5. < 6. >
- C.** 1. $\frac{2}{11}$, $\frac{3}{11}$, $\frac{5}{11}$, $\frac{7}{11}$, $\frac{13}{11}$ 2. $\frac{1}{9}$, $\frac{2}{9}$, $\frac{5}{9}$, $\frac{7}{9}$, $\frac{8}{9}$
- D.** 1. $\frac{5}{9}$, $\frac{4}{9}$, $\frac{3}{9}$, $\frac{2}{9}$, $\frac{1}{9}$ 2. $\frac{9}{11}$, $\frac{7}{11}$, $\frac{6}{11}$, $\frac{4}{11}$, $\frac{1}{11}$

Exercise 3

- A.** 1. $\frac{4}{4}$ 2. $\frac{7}{15}$ 3. $\frac{4}{3}$ 4. $\frac{14}{8}$
- B.** 1. $\frac{3}{13}$ 2. $\frac{2}{11}$ 3. $\frac{2}{4}$ 4. $\frac{1}{7}$
- C.** 1. Not equivalent 2. Equivalent
 - 3. Equivalent 4. Equivalent



- F. 1. $\frac{4}{3}$ 2. $\frac{8}{9}$ 3. $\frac{3}{11}$ 4. 1 5. $\frac{1}{3}$ 6. $\frac{3}{5}$

Chapter 2 : Exercise 1

- A. 1. 1000 m 2. 20000 cm 3. 120 cm
4. 2450 m 5. 450 mm 6. 745 cm
- B. 1. 1000 2. 100 3. 1000
- C. 1. 105 centimetres
2. 102 millimetres
3. 4400 metres 4. 1200 millimetres
- D. 1. 2 cm 2. 20 mm

Exercise 2

- A. 1. 14 m 95 cm
2. 5 m 60 cm
3. 14 m 10 cm
4. 13 m 70 cm
5. 8 m 20 cm
6. 52 m 95 cm
- B. 1. 7 m 8 cm
2. 4 m 89 cm
3. 1 m 75 cm
4. 8 m 10 cm
5. 21 m 80 cm
6. 1 m

Exercise 3

- A. 1. 38 m 50 cm 2. 54 m 60 cm
3. 193 m 84 cm 4. 332 m 70 cm
5. 191 m 22 cm 6. 3107 m 70 cm
7. 1705 m 84 cm 8. 225 m 30 cm
9. 4582 m 55 cm
- B. 1. 49 m 9 cm
2. 66 m 32 cm
3. 79 m 30 cm
4. 41 m 9 cm
5. 56 m 85 cm
- C. 1. 10 m 60 cm 2. 956 cm
3. 1 m 64 cm 4. 9 cm
5. 75 cm

Chapter 3 : Exercise 1

- A. 1. grams 2. grams 3. kilograms 4. grams
5. tonnes 6. grams 7. grams

Exercise 2

- A. 1. 1 kg 200 g 2. 1 kg 600 g 3. 2 kg
4. 3 kg 500 g 5. 3 kg 70 g
- B. 1. 3350 g 2. 4200 g 3. 23215 g
4. 10000 g 5. 125400 g

Exercise 3

- A. 1. 57 kg 650 g 2. 8 kg 558 g 3. 30 kg 548g
4. 75 kg 765 g 5. 81 kg 860 g
- B. 1. 2 kg 75 g 2. 3 kg 775 g 3. 1 kg 125 g
4. 1 kg 140 g 5. 5 kg 700 g

Exercise 4

- A. 1. 15 kg 2. 138 kg 3. 18 kg 4. 463 kg 75 g
5. 492 kg 104 g 6. 198 kg 750 g
- B. 1. 6 kg 100 g 2. 11 kg 011 g 3. 9 kg 140 g
4. 25 kg 019 g
- C. 1. 9.7 kg 2. 8 kg 3. 1800 g 4. 10 g, 11 g,
23 g, 84 g, 125 g 5. 1000 crayons
6. 1500 g

Chapter 4 : Exercise 1

- A. 1. 4 l 357 ml 2. 9952 ml 3. 1281 ml
4. 1760 ml 5. 7239 ml 6. 6 l 744 ml
7. 3 l 852 ml 8. 2671 ml 9. 3245 ml
10. 2453 ml

Exercise 2

- A. 1. 6 l 700 ml 2. 35 l 450 ml 3. 26 l 380 ml
4. 17 l 016 ml 5. 58 l 250 ml
6. 20 l 385 ml 7. 86 l 215 ml
8. 30 l 150 ml 9. 36 l 005 ml
10. 29 l 605 ml
- B. 1. 9 l 100 ml 2. 1 l 113 ml
3. 9 l 200 ml 4. 40 l 290ml
5. 9 l 810 ml 6. 32 l 900 ml
7. 11 l 100 ml 8. 14 l 900 ml
9. 9 l 50 ml 10. 12 l 120 ml

Chapter 5 : Exercise 1

- A. 1. 1.15 2. 4.45 3. 7.15 4. 2.45
- B. 1. 3.35 2. 8.55 3. 12.40 4. 10.05
5. 5.25 6. 7.10 7. 1.15 8. 2.45
9. 6.20

Exercise 2

- A. 1. 15.30 hrs 2. 4.15 hrs 3. 5.45 hrs
4. 23.00 hrs 5. 19.10 hrs 6. 9.45 hrs
- B. 1. 8.15 a.m. 2. 8.45 p.m. 3. 7.15 a.m.
4. 5.45 a.m. 5. 5.00 p.m.

Exercise 3

- A. 1. 60 seconds 2. 60 minutes 3. 24 hours
4. 7 days 5. 12.00 hours 6. 12.00 hours
7. a.m., p.m. 8. 31 days 9. 28 days
10. 29 days 11. 31 days 12. 31 days
13. 30 days 14. 31 days 15. 52 weeks
16. 365 days 17. 366 days 18. 10



years

19. 100 years

- B.** 1. Thursday 2. 30 days 3. Monday 4. 41 days
5. 11 days 6. 2nd, 9th, 16th, 23rd and 30th
7. 3, 10, 17 and 24 8. 5 Sundays
9. 5 Wednesdays 10. Sunday
11. Thursday 12. 3rd 13. 11th
- C.** 1. 1998 – Not a leap year
2. 2000 – A leap year
3. 1990 – Not a leap year
4. 2004 – A leap year
5. 2010 – Not a leap year
- D.** 1. April 2. August 3. December 4. February
5. January 6. July 7. June 8. March 9. May
10. November 11. October 12. September

Chapter 6 : Exercise 1

- A.** 1. ₹ 79.75 2. ₹ 3.50 3. ₹ 120.00
4. ₹ 230.45
- B.** 1. Fifty rupees and fifty paise
2. Twenty three rupees and seventy five paise
3. Three hundred and one rupee
4. Ninety seven rupees and twenty five paise
5. Fourteen rupees and five paise
- C.** 1. 500 p 2. 725 p 3. 1350 p 4. 12320 p
5. 85 p
- D.** 1. Rs 1.23 2. Rs 8.05 3. Rs 12.15
4. Rs 0.72 5. Rs 13.94

Exercise 2

- A.** 1. 47.8 2. 70.60 3. 69.51 4. 165.40
5. 349.78 6. 39.31
- B.** 1. 28.05 2. 14.70 3. 96.09 4. 31.40
5. 200.25 6. 514.75

Exercise 3

- A.** 1. 75 2. 54 3. 81.75 4. 246 5. 123.0
6. 214.00 7. 1737.45 8. 1470.49 9. 0.75
10. 588.24
- B.** 1. 10.60 2. 10.85 3. 20.11 4. 25.12
5. 91.00 6. 103.51 7. 17 8. 80.91
9. 77.33 10. 13.76
- C.** a. 149.99 b. 73.50 c. 149.00 d. 74.50
2. a. 38 b. 16.50 d. 156 e. 2.00

Chapter 7 : Exercise 1

- A.** 1. a. 4 students b. 12 students
2. a. sports b. 12 students
3. b. 12 c. 5 d. 13 e. 3
4. a. 20 b. 15

5. 20 votes

Chapter 8 : Exercise 2

- A.** 1. line segment DB 2. line segment MN
3. line segment XY 4. line segment AB
- B.** 1. Ray QR 2. Line UV 3. Line CD
4. Point L 5. Line HI 6. Ray XY
7. Line NO 8. Ray KJ

Chapter 9 : Exercise 2

- A.** 1. 11 2. 12 3. 64 4. 66 5. 19
6. 24 7. 30 8. 77, 88, 99 9. 127
10. 63 11. 44 12. 43

Exploring Science

Chapter 1: Human Body, Health and Hygiene

- A.** 1. Different organs work together to perform a particular function of the body. They are called organ system.
2. Skeletal system gives shape and size to our body. It also protects the internal organs of the body.
3. Circulatory system comprises heart, blood and blood vessels.
4. The function of the excretory system is to clean our body by throwing out body wastes like urine and stool through kidney and sweat through skin.
5. The heart pumps blood to different parts of the body through small and big blood vessels.
6. Rice, maize, sugar, ghee etc., are the food items which gives us carbohydrates.
- B.** 1. Eyes, ears, nose, tongue and skin are the five main sense organs.
2. The different parts of body move with the help of muscular system.
3. We get minerals and vitamins from protective foods.
- C.** 1. cells 2. organ 3. digestive 4. heart
5. diseases 6. milk 7. proteins
- D.** 1. ✓ 2. ✗ 3. ✗ 4. ✗ 5. ✓ 6. ✓
- E.** 1. c 2. g 3. f 4. e 5. a 6. d 7. b
- F.** 1. c 2. b 3. a 4. b 5. c

**Chapter 2 : Housing and Clothing**

- A. 1. We need house to live in. It protects us from heat, cold, rain, wild animals and thieves.
 2. Open space make a house airy. It also gives space to children to play.
 3. i) House should be properly cleaned and mopped everyday.
 ii) Drains of kitchen and bathroom should always be covered.
 iii) Waste should be thrown into dustbin. Dustbins should be kept covered.
 iv) Curtains must be washed regularly.
 v) Bathrooms, washbasin and toilet must be cleaned daily.
 4. Clothes protect us from heat, cold and rain. They also protect us from insect bites. They makes us look smart and beautiful.
 5. i) We get woollen fibres from animals like sheep and yak.
 ii) We get silk fibres from insects like silk worm.
- B. 1. Igloos are the houses made of cut blocks of ice.
 2. Wire nets prevent the entry of mosquitoes and other insects.
 3. Fibres that are made by human beings are man-made fibres.
 4. Fibres that we get from plants and animals are natural fibres.
- C. 1. stilt 2. walls 3. drains
 D. 1. ✗ 2. ✗ 3. ✗ 4. ✓ 5. ✓
 E. 1. c 2. d 3. b, d
 F. 1. e 2. d 3. b 4. c 5. a

Chapter 3 : Safety First

- A. 1. Safety rules helps to avoid accidents.
 2. The first assistance or help given to an injured person is called first aid.
 3. For a bleeding person we have to tie a clean hanky or bandage at the spot and ask him to lie down, keeping the wounded part of the body high.
 4. The following precautions are necessary while crossing the road.
 i) Cross the road at Zebra crossing.
 ii) Cross the road only when vehicals on both sides are stopped.

5. The following safety rules must be followed in the kitchen.
 i) Never enter the kitchen with loose nylon clothes.
 ii) Never play with gas stove, match sticks and pointed and sharp knives.
 iii) Keep distance from the steaming utensils and hot objects.
6. The three safety rules while playing are
 i) Avoid playing near thorny hedges or barbed wires.
 ii) Do not hit others with bat or ball.
 iii) Do not quarrel with anyone.
- B. 1. Antiseptic should be applied after washing the wounded body part with dettol.
 2. We cross a busy road at zebra crossing.
 3. In the case of a body burn, quickly pour cold water or ice over the affected area. Then apply Burnol.
- C. 1. safety rules 2. electric shock
 3. zebra crossing 4. left
- D. 1. ✗ 2. ✓ 3. ✗ 4. ✓
- E. 1. b 2. c 3. c 4. a 5. b
- F. 1. c 2. e 3. d 4. a 5. b

Chapter 4 : Measurement

- A. 1. Liquids are measured in litres.
 2. Length is measured in kilo meters.
 3. Time is measured in hours and seconds.
 4. There are thousand grams in 1 kg.
 5. One metre is longer than one yard.
- B. 1. Temperature is measured either on centigrade scale or on Fahrenheit scale.
 2. The normal temperature of a human body is 98.4°F or 37°C
 3. Yard is still used in India, Pakistan and Bangladesh.
 4. The laboratory thermometres is used for measuring the temperature of liquids.
 5. There are 1000 metres in 1 km.
- C. 1. grams and kilograms 2. length 3. 0.9144
 4. kilometres 5. centimetres
- D. 1. ✗ 2. ✗ 3. ✗ 4. ✓ 5. ✗
- E. 1. a 2. b 3. c 4. d 5. c
- F. 1. d 2. c 3. b 4. a

Chapter 5 : The Earth and The Moon

- A. 1. The movement of the Earth about its axis is called rotation.
2. If we stand at a sea shore and watch a ship sailing away from us, we will see that the lower part of the ship disappears first and the top part disappears last. It shows that the earth is round.
3. The movement of Earth around the Sun in a fixed path is called revolution.
4. The rotation of the Earth causes day and night. The Earth takes nearly 24 hours to rotate once on its axis. Thus, 24 hours make 1 day.
5. The Earth takes about $365\frac{1}{4}$ days to go around the Sun. Thus 365 days make a year.
6. As the Moon goes round the Earth we can only see that part which gets illuminated by the sun. It seems to us Moon changes its shape daily. This change of shape is called the phases of the Moon. The day on which we cannot see the Moon at all is called new moon day. Day by day, small portions of the moon appearing in the sky are crescent moons. One half part of the moon seen after 7 days is half moon. The full face of the moon seen after two weeks is full moon.
- B. 1. The revolution of the Earth causes changes in season.
2. The group of stars are called constellation.
3. The people, who travel into space are called astronauts.
- C. 1. Spherical 2. third 3. 24 hours 4. axis 5. light
- D. 1. X 2. ✓ 3. X 4. ✓ 5. ✓
- E. 1. b 2. a 3. d 4. b
- F. 1. c 2. b 3. a 4. e 5. d

Chapter 6 : Air, Water and Weather

- A. 1. i) Moving air helps in moving sail boats, flying kites etc.
ii) Wind mills also run due to moving air.
iii) If the air blows fast wet clothes dry up quickly.
2. Water changes into vapour when it is heated at 100°C .
3. The sun causes water to evaporate from rivers, lakes and seas, the evaporated water vapour forms clouds. In the clouds, water droplets condense and fall back to Earth as rain or snow. This process is called water cycle.
4. The different kinds of weather are
i) Sunny days ii) Cloudy days iii) Windy days
iv) Rainy days

5. We wear woollen clothes in winter to protect ourselves from cold winds.
- B. 1. The average condition of weather over many years is called climate of a region.
2. Fast moving air is called wind.
3. The three states of water are solid(ice), liquid and gas (vapour).
- C. 1. oxygen 2. winter season 3. liquid
4. water vapour 5. ice
- D. 1. X 2. X 3. X 4. X 5. ✓
- E. 1. d 2. b 3. e 4. c 5. a
- F. 1. a 2. a 3. a 4. d

Social Studies

Chapter 1 : Means of Communication

- A. a. Sending or receiving messages is known as communication.
b. Satellite is an electronic device sent into space to collect information.
c. A network of communication that connect computers all over the world is known as internet.
d. A message in the computer which communicate very fast anywhere in the world among the people is known as E-mail.
- B. 1. Communication means sending or receiving messages.
2. A letter reach its destination; when the address completely written along with pin code on it.
3. We can send message through telegram only but we send parcels through speed post.
4. A mobile or cellular phone has the advantage of being handy than a telephone.
5. We communicate with large number of people at a time by mass communications such as Newspaper, Radio and Television.
- C. 1. letters 2. parcels 3. mobile 4. fax
5. television
- D. 1. F 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. T
- E. 1. v 2. iii 3. iv 4. i 5. ii
- F. 1. iii 2. i 3. i 4. iii
- ### Chapter 2 : People Who Help Us
- A. i) A liquid injected into the body to make us safe from diseases is known as Vaccine.
ii) Rules made by the government is called as Law.
iii) Patrol means to walk around and guard.



iv) Vehicle on the road is known as Traffic.

- B. 1. We learn many subjects and good manners from a teacher.
 2. We celebrate 'Teacher's Day' on 5th September every year.
 3. When we feel sick we go to doctor.
 4. A policeman maintains law and order and to protect our lives and properties.
 5. A postman who delivers letters of the people.
- C. 1. Society 2. teacher 3. doctor
 4. dispensaries 5. uniform
- D. 1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T
- E. 1. iv 2. iii 3. v 4. i 5. ii
- F. 1. Bank Manager 2. Doctor 3. Traffic 4. Traffic policeman
- G. 1. ii 2. i 3. iv 4. iii 5. iv

Chapter 3 : Local Government Agencies

- A. a) Civic amenities means facilities for people like water, school, hospital etc.
 b) A person who has full rights as a member of country.
 c) Money that you have to pay to the government so that it can pay for public services.
- B. 1. Drinking water, roads, schools, electricity and hospitals.
 2. The member of a Gram Panchayat are elected by the people of the village.
 3. Sarpanch is the head of the panchayat.
 4. Running schools for the village children. construction and repair of village streets and roads.
 5. The Municipal Committee get money from the taxes of houses, roads, land, electricity and water.
- C. 1. cleanliness 2. 18 3. woman 4. amenities 5. Mayor
- D. 1. T 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. F
- E. 1. iv 2. iii 3. ii 4. v 5. i
- G. 1. PANCHAS 2. PRADHAN 3. GRAMSEVAK
 4. TAX 5. CHAIRMAN
- F. 1. C 2. A 3. A 4. C

Chapter 4 : Delhi

- A. i) Something that remains as a remainder of something is known as Monument.
 ii) Samadhi is a structure built in memory of a person.

iii) Loo means hot, dry winds.

- iv) The official head quarters of an ambassador is called as Embassy.
- B. 1) Delhi is surrounded by Uttar Pradesh in the east and Haryana on the other three sides.
 2) Delhi was first built by Pandava kings as Indraprastha. Thousands of years later, Mughal Emperor Shah Jahan built it and called it Shah Jahanabad.
 3. Offices of the Prime Minister, President and the Departments of the Government, High Commissions and Embassies are in Delhi.
 4. The Amar Jawan Jyothi at India Gate burns all the time in memory of the soldiers who sacrificed their lives for our country.
 5. Delhi is known as Mini-India because people from different parts of India live in Delhi and people speak different languages and celebrate different festivals.
- C. 1. Yamuna 2. Capital 3. Parliament 4. Samadhi 5. July
- D. 1. F 2. T 3. T 4. T 5. F
- E. 1. iii 2. i 3. ii 4. i 5. iv
- F. 1. iv 2. i 3. ii 4. i 5. iv

Chapter 5 : Mumbai

- A. a) Elephanta caves are four rock-cut temples in Mumbai.
 b) Sea bed means floor of the sea.
 c) A prominent feature of a landscape is known as Land mark.
- B. 1. Mumbai is called as Business Capital of India because it is a city of factories and it is an important centre for receiving and sending goods outside the country.
 2. The climate of Mumbai is moderate. It is neither too hot in summer not too cold in winter.
 3. People of Mumbai worshipped Goddess Mumba Devi after whom the city is believed to be named.
 4. The shining lights along the Marine Drive look like a beautiful necklace. This stretch is called as Queen's Necklace.
 5. Gate way of India, Kamala Nehru Park, Jahangir Art Gallery and Taraporevala Aquarium.
- C. 1. Marine Drive 2. Land mark 3. Moderate 4. Bombay 5. Sea bed.
- D. 1. F 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. F
- E. 1. iv 2. v 3. i 4. ii 5. iii
- F. 1. iv 2. ii 3. i 4. i 5. iv

Chapter 6 : Kolkata

- A. a. The old hanging bridge on the River Hoogli is called Howrah Bridge. It is also called Rabindra Setu.
b) Kolkata city has so many buildings of historical importance that it often called the 'City of Palaces'.
c) Diamond Harbour is a part in Kolkata.
- B. 1. Kolkata called earlier as Calcutta.
2. Rabindra Setu bridge connects Howrah with the city of Kolkata. It is a unique bridge as it has no pillars below it to support.
3. Metro and Tram are the means of transport in Kolkata.
4. Jute, silk, rice, paper and chemicals are some important industries.
5. Kolkata city has so many buildings of historical importance that it often called 'The City of Palaces'
- C. 1. Hoogli 2. Birla 3. Metro 4. Kolkata 5. Fish
D. 1. F 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. T
E. 1. ii 2. iv 3. i 4. v 5. iii
F. 1. c 2. a 3. d 4. a 5. c

Chapter 7 : Chennai

- A. a. Seaport is a stop for ships.
b. Bay of Bengal is a sea beside Chennai.
c. Carnatic music is the tradition music of Tamil Nadu.
- B. 1. Chennai is spread for about 20 kilometers along the coast of the Bay of Bengal.
2. Railway coaches, electrical goods, cotton textile, cement and fertilisers.
3. Pongal is the main festival of Chennai.
4. The climate of Chennai is hot and humid throughout the year.
5. St. Thomas Cathedral Church, Kapaleswar Temple, Parthasarathi Temple and Gandhi Mandapam.
- C. 1. Fourth 2. seaport 3. rice 4. chess 5. winter
D. 1. F 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. F
E. 1. iii 2. v 3. ii 4. i 5. iv
F. 1. b 2. d 3. b 4. b

Chapter 8 : Life of the Early Man-I

- A. a) Tools are made by Early man with sharp wooden sticks and stones.
b) Something which doesn't exist earlier and come to know because of the efforts of a scientist.
c) To find something for the first time is known as Discover.
d) Animals which live in the Jungle are known as

Wild Animals.

- B. 1. Early humans ate wild fruits and roots and hunted small animals.
2. The early men kill the animals without going near them because to protect them from wild animals.
3. The early humans make fire with stones.
4. The fire made the flesh of animals tastier and easier to eat.
5. The early men cover their body with the skins of animals or leaves of trees.
- C. 1. Jungle 2. farming 3. food 4. fire 5. sparks
D. 1. T 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. T
E. 1. iii 2. v 3. iv 4. ii 5. i
F. 1. d 2. d 3. a 4. b 5. b

Chapter 9 : Life of the Early Man-II

- A. a) Something which doesn't exist earlier and come to know because of the efforts of a scientist.
b) To find something for the first time is known as discover.
c) Animals which live in the Jungle are known as wild animals.
- B. 1. Farming helped the early man to settle down at one place.
2. The early humans settle near rivers because the plants needed water and fertile soil to grow well.
3. Horses, donkeys, cows, bullocks and dogs.
4. A number of straight logs were tied together to make a raft.
5. Early humans made carts that could be pulled along the ground. They were called sledges.
- C. 1. water 2. rivers 3. domesticating 4. goods 5. uneven
D. 1. T 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. T
E. 1. v 2. iii 3. iv 4. ii 5. i
F. 1. ii 2. iv 3. ii 4. ii 5. i

General Knowledge

Chapter 1 : Language & Literature

a) Story Time

- 1) 2 2) 3 3) 4 4) 5 5) 6
6) 1

b) Toon Time

- 1) Super Man 2) Kipper 3) He man
4) Bat man 5) Donald Duck 6) Flik
7) Johnny Bravo 8) Rug Rats 9) Phantom

c) Make a Word

- 1) Horse 2) Tap 3) Ball
4) Parrot 5) Monkey 6) Milk
7) Coat 8) Chair 9) Dusk
10) Pen

d) Call them in Groups

- 1) bouquet 2) library 3) shoal
4) flock 5) troop 6) bunch



- 7) swarm 8) fleet 9) brood
10) pack 11) leap 12) army

e) Let's Group them

- 1) cultery 2) tools 3) birds
4) stationary 5) spices 6) fruits
7) furniture

f) Don't Meet Mispell

- 1) weak 2) journey 3) umbrella
4) basket 5) comb 6) reach
7) stethoscope 8) scene 9) aquarium
10) mother 11) monkey 12) station

g) It is said so ...

- 1) 5 2) 4 3) 3 4) 1 5) 2

h) Short and Sweet

- 1) l 2) k 3) j 4) i 5) h
6) g 7) f 8) e 9) d 10) c
11) b 12) a

Chapter 2 : I Love My India

a) Our Motherland

- 1) China, Pakistan, Bangladesh
2) Ganga, Brahmaputra, Godavari
3) The Himalayas 4) Arabian Sea
5) Indian Ocean 6) Bay of Bengal
7) Sri Lanka

b) Our Dances

- 1) 9 - a 2) 8 - b 3) 7 - b 4) 6 - f 5) 5 - e
6) 3 - c 7) 4 - g 8) 2 - h 9) 1 - i

c) Our Rivers & Mountains

- 1) Ganga 2) Brahmaputra 3) Kosi
4) Narmada 5) Cauvery 6) Sutlej
7) Krishna 8) Tapi 9) Yamuna
10) Gomti 11) Nilgiri 12) Arawali
13) Vindhyas 14) Himalayas 15) Karakoram

d) Our Land Marks

- 1) Sun Temple 2) Victoria Memorial
3) Statue of Bahubali 4) Sanchi Stupa
5) Jagannadh Temple 6) Akshardham
7) Buland Darwaj 8) Rankpur Temple

e) Our States & Capitals

- 1) 28 2) 27 3) 26 4) 25 5) 24 6) 23
7) 22 8) 21 9) 20 10) 19 11) 18 12) 17
13) 16 14) 15 15) 14 16) 13 17) 12 18) 11
19) 10 20) 9 21) 8 22) 7 23) 6 24) 5
25) 4 26) 3 27) 2 28) 1

f) Our Great Warriors

- 1) Shivaji 2) Jhansi Lakshmi Bai
3) Akbar 4) Asoka
5) Sri Krishnadevaraya 6) Vikramaditya
7) Maharana Pratap 8) Ranjith Singh

g) Our Presidents

- 1) Babu Rajendra Prasad 2) S. Radha Krishnan
3) V.V. Giri 4) Zakir Hussain
5) Fakruddin Ali Ahamed 6) N. Sanjeeva Reddy
7) Zail Singh 8) R. Venkat Raman
9) Shankar Dayal Sharma 10) K.R. Narayan
11) A.P.J. Abdul Kalam 12) Pratibha Patil

h) Our Prime Ministers

- 1) Manmohan Singh
2) Pandit Jawaharlal Nehru
3) Lal Bahadur Shastri
4) Indira Gandhi 5) Morarji Desai
6) Charan Singh 7) Rajiv Gandhi
8) V.P. Singh 9) Chandra Sekhar
10) P.V. Narasimha Rao
11) H.D. Deva Gowda
12) I.K. Gujaral 13) A.B. Vajpayee

i) Our Brand Names

- 1) Watch 2) Soap
3) Biscuits 4) Tooth paste
5) Camera 6) Sandals and Shoes
7) Drink 8) Drink
9) Tyres 10) Chocolate
11) Two Wheeler 12) Coffee

j) Our Languages

- 1) Telugu 2) Assamese
3) Gujarati 4) Kannada
5) Malayalam 6) Marathi
7) Oriya 8) Punjabi
9) Rajasthani 10) Tamil
11) Hindi 12) Bengali

Chapter 3 : World Window

a) Nations and Nationalities

- 1) 8, Americans 2) 7, Chinese
3) 6, Danes 4) 5, British
5) 4, Germans 6) 3, Indonesians
7) 2, Japanese 8) 1, Indians

b) The Three C's

- 2) Dhaka 3) Yuan 4) Denmark
5) Cairo 6) Euro 7) Germany
8) Tokyo 9) Ringgit 10) Nepal





ANSWERS (CLASS - 4 / SEMESTER - I)

Now Easy English

Chapter 1 : The Three Sneezes

Reading

1. Hari sat on the branch of the tree and began to saw it;
2. Hari thought that the stranger was an astrologer;
3. No, the stranger was a wise man who thought correctly of the consequences. He was not an astrologer;
4. The donkey sneezed for the first time as the fly went in his nose;
5. No, the Hari didn't die but he pretended to lay flat on the ground and cry out that he was dead.

Vocabulary

1. precious
2. preserve
3. confidential
4. scent
5. immense

Grammar

1. so
2. because
3. so
4. because
5. so

Chapter 2 : Mr. Nobody

Reading

1. In the first stanza Mr. Nobody is compared. to a mouse.
2. The pranks played by Mr. Nobody are as follows- Mr. Nobody tears the books, leaves the door open, pulls the buttons from the shirts, scatters the pins and spreads the oil all over the house.
3. He puts damp wood on the fire, that kettles cannot boil.
His are the feet that bring in mud and all the carpet's soil.
The finger marks upon the door.
4. Mr. Nobody soils the carpets by running over it with his muddy feet.
5. Accept all reasonable responses.

Grammar

1. your, yours
2. my, mine
3. her, hers
4. our, ours
5. their, theirs

Chapter 3 : A Journey to the Moon

Reading

1. Neil Armstrong, Michael Collins and Edwin Aldrin were the three astronauts who travelled to moon in the year 1969.
2. They travelled in a famous aircraft known as Apollo.
3. After opening the door Armstrong stepped out wearing a black suit and helmet. On his back he had something which looked like a big black box. This was his life support which helped him breathe and protected him from extreme conditions. Once he stepped out of the Eagle, his body gradually started floating. This is because a person on the moon weighs much less than he does on earth.

They first set up instruments that would help them find out many facts about the Moon. They gathered rocks and soil to bring back to earth.

4. Yes, their journey was successful as they were able to complete their mission of the being the first people to land on Moon.

5. Their journey was dangerous as the spacecraft had to go to another planet 'Moon'. It was exciting as if they were successful they would create history. Also they had the rare opportunity of visiting the Moon.

6. Explain in your own words his feelings.

Vocabulary

1. clear
2. round
3. phases
4. waxes and wanes
5. float

Spelling

1. Pacific ocean
2. Spacecraft
3. Companions
4. Journey
5. Eagle

Grammar

1. some
2. any, some
3. no
4. any
5. some

Chapter 4 : Pandora's box

Reading

1. Pandora was the daughter of Zeus and Hephaestus;
2. Zeus was angry with Prometheus because Prometheus had given fire to people and had tricked him.;
3. One day when Epimetheus slept Pandora stole the key and



opened the box; 4. The things that flew out of the box were sickness, worries, crimes, hatred, envy, and all sorts of bad things;

5. The last thing that flew out of the box was 'Hope'.

Vocabulary

1. May I come in?; 2. I'm sorry I'm late; 3. Bye! See you soon; 4. Thank you.

Grammar

1. Tom returned the camera, didn't he?; 2. We have eaten our supper, haven't we?; 3. We should go to the restaurant, shouldn't we?; 4. He would certainly help us, wouldn't he?; 5. Stanley is a dancer, isn't he?

Speaking

1. Every cloud - has a silver lining
2. Too many cooks - spoil the broth
3. Look before - your leap
4. Honesty - is the best policy
5. When the cat's are away - the mice are at play
6. A friend in need - is a friend in deed

Chapter 5 : You are Old, Father William

Reading

1. The poet's name is Lewis Carroll;
2. Father William is old but he is not ready to accept his age. His son keeps trying his level best to make him aware of his actual age;
3. 'You are Old' and 'In my youth' are the words repeated in the poem because this poem is a conversation between a father and his son, where the son keeps talking about the father being old and his father keeps replying about his youth;
4. Father William said he was not ready to hear any more stuff. He told the youth to be off or else he would kick him.

Vocabulary

1. husband; 2. sister-in-law; 3. cousins;
4. uncle; 5. mother;
6. father-in-law, mother-in-law; 7. daughter.

Grammar

1. Fatter, Fattest; 2. Taller, Tallest; 3. Easier, Easiest; 4. Longer, Longest; 5. Wiser, Wisest;
6. Better, Best; 7. More difficult, Most difficult;

8. More peaceful, Most peaceful; 9. Worse, Worst; 10. More beautiful, Most beautiful.

Pronunciation

1. Friendship; 2. Encourageous; 3. Agreement;
4. Courtship; 5. Lovable; 6. Troublesome;
7. Attractive; 8. Protective.

Chapter 6 : Tiger, Tiger, Burning Bright

Reading

1. The tiger's golden yellow coat and black stripes;
2. The poet feels that the tiger is the most dashing creature. The tiger with its bright colours, shining eyes, with its sleek body and fleshy paws inspired the poet William Blake;
3. Hammer, chain, anvils, spears;
4. Answer in your own words.

Vocabulary

1. Shining, cheerful, clever;
2. Fire, heat, glow, flame;
3. Symmetry is when one shape becomes exactly like another;
4. Causing or capable of causing fear; frightening;
5. To challenge;
6. A tendon; vigorous strength; muscular power.

Grammar

1. pact 2. brake 3. waste 4. jeans 5. ate

Spelling

1. Weighs 2. Special 3. Animals
4. Burn 5. Kilogram

Listening

1-3-6-5-2-4

Grammar

Chapter 1 : Present Simple....usually / always/ every

Exercises

A. 2. eats 3. play 4. sleeps 5. washes
B. 2. drive 3. bakes 4. play 5. drinks
C. 2. Sandy listens to music everyday.
3. We always watch TV in the evening.
4. He reads the newspaper every night.
D. eat, reads, washes, go, jogs

Chapter 2 : Present Simple do / don't/ does / doesn't

Exercises

A. 2. doesn't 3. don't 4. doesn't 5. don't



- B. 2. Does 3. Do 4. Does 5. Does 6. Do
 C. 2. doesn't drink 3. don't play 4. don't need
 D. 2. Do you ride your bike every day ?
 You don't ride your bike every day.
 3. Does she play tennis on the weekends ?
 She doesn't play tennis on the weekends.
 4. Do they wash their dog on Sundays ?
 They don't wash their dog on Sundays.
 5. Does their family go to the beach every summer ?
 Their family don't go to the beach every summer.

Chapter 3 : Adverbs fast / slowly

Exercises

- A. loudly - quietly, well-badly, sadly-happily
 B. 2. fastly 3. slowly 4. angrily 5. loudly
 C. 2. The snail moves slowly.
 3. They play happily.
 4. He plays soccer well.
 5. The baby cries sadly.
 D. 2. Can dolphins swim quickly ?
 3. The mice eat quietly.
 4. She plays basketball poorly.
 5. Can you sing well ?

Chapter 4 : Be ... was / were

Exercises

- A. 2. were 3. was 4. was 5. were 6. was
 B. 2. was 3. wasn't 4. were 5. was 6. was
 C. 2. Was Kelly at the restaurant last night ?
 3. No, he wasn't.
 4. Was Andrew at the toy store last Monday ?
 5. Was Patrick at school last Saturday ?
 Yes, he was.

Explore Math

Chapter 1 : Exercise 1

- A. 1. fifty thousand three hundred nineteen
 2. twenty-one thousand seven hundred eighty-three
 3. nineteen thousand seven hundred sixty-four
 4. twenty-eight thousand five hundred ninety-nine
 5. eighty seven thousand three hundred
 6. one lakh thirty-two thousand five hundred forty-nine

7. one lakh two hundred ten
 8. seven lakh fifty thousand one
 9. two lakh thirteen thousand four hundred thirty two
 10. eight lakhs forty-five thousand three hundred twenty.

- B. 1. 20,300 2. 55,403 3. 78,617 4. 45,275
 5. 66,666

- C. 1. Smallest 5-digit number – 10,000 ten thousand
 Largest 5-digit number – 99,999 ninety-nine thousand nine hundred ninety-nine
 2. Smallest 6-digit number – 1,00,000 one lakh
 Largest 6-digit number – 9,99,999 nine lakh ninety-nine thousand nine hundred ninety-nine

- D. Do it yourself. E. Do it yourself.

Exercise 2

- A. 1. 95,783 2. 2,39,876 3. 41,52,609
 4. 2,09,003 5. 5,690
 B. 1. 400, 4, ones 2. 60,000, 6, thousands
 3. 500, 5, ones 4. 9, 9, Ones
 5. 3,00,000, 3, lakhs
 C. 1. $1,00,000 + 90,000 + 1,000 + 300 + 30 + 4$
 2. $1,00,000 + 30,000 + 4000 + 700 + 90 + 8$
 3. $1,00,000 + 70,000 + 9000 + 500 + 90 + 0$
 4. $3,00,000 + 50,000 + 6000 + 700 + 30 + 2$
 5. $4,00,000 + 60,000 + 200 + 10 + 6$
 D. 1. 2,32,341 2. 52,408 3. 1,03,333
 4. 8,20,945 5. 8,73,727
 E. 1. 4000 2. 4 3. 400 4. 4,00,000 5. 40
 F. 1 G. 5940

Exercise 3

- A. 1. < 2. > 3. > 4. < 5. > 6. <
 7. < 8. < 9. > 10. <
 B. 1. 14,560; 23,567; 35,803; 45,098; 90,800
 2. 44,451; 44,512; 45,080; 45,807; 45,900
 3. 10,200; 12,000; 20,001; 20,100; 21,010
 4. 1,23,098; 2,08,789; 4,52,710; 7,34,642; 9,20,743
 5. 1,06,732; 2,60,912; 2,79,021; 3,45,601; 5,60,634



6. 3,36,097; 3,40,753; 3,45,098; 3,67,908;
3,81,523

- C.** 1. 63,538; 43,568; 23,586; 13,500
2. 15,209; 14,390; 10,403; 10,309; 10,209
3. 67,567; 67,243; 67,198; 67,169; 67,098
4. 9,70,432; 8,67,190; 5,12,065; 3,56,309;
2,30,584
5. 1,45,705; 1,32,189; 1,32,098; 1,29,000;
1,28,717
6. 9,67,902; 9,67,345; 9,63,562; 9,63,098;
9,61,732

- D.** 1. 24,368 2. 89,077 3. 12,601 4. 20,000
5. 29,010 6. 1,56,891 7. 2,77,000
8. 9,90,100 9. 4,69,010 10. 6,66,700

- E.** 1. 89,004 2. 79,999 3. 54,141 4. 23,899
5. 78,009 6. 1,68,899 7. 8,95,079
8. 4,55,999 9. 2,35,209 10. 99,999

- F.** 1. 12,379 2. 97,321 **G.** 1. 146789 2. 987641

Exercise 4

- A.** 1. one hundred sixty-three thousand nine hundred sixty-one
2. three hundred twenty-eight thousand five hundred forty-two
3. three hundred forty-nine thousand eight hundred twenty-six
4. three hundred eighty-four thousand two hundred eighty-eight
5. nine hundred thirty-three thousands seven hundred seventy-eight
6. three hundred eighty-seven thousand seven hundred sixty six
7. seven hundred eighty-four thousand six hundred ninety-four
8. eight hundred eighty three thousand six hundred seventy-three

- B.** 1. 237,795 2. 75,856 3. 311,175 4. 37,265
5. 75,695

- C.** 1. 964311 2. 944333 3. 887541 4. 988775
5. 975444

Exercise 5

- A.** 1. 9 2. 58 3. 75 4. 79 5. 60 6. 86
7. 61 8. 71 9. 58 10. 52

- B.** 1. LXIV 2. XXXVIII 3. XLVII 4. IV
5. XCV
6. V 7. XXX 8. LXVIII 9. LXXXI 10. VIII
C. 1. (c) 2. (e) 3. (d) 4. (b) 5. (a)

Chapter 2 : Exercise 1

- A.** 1. 8907 2. 5436 3. 9071 4. 8366
5. 8223 6. 7912 7. 5202 8. 16142
9. 34702

Exercise 2

- A.** 1. 595258 2. 989843 3. 910084 4. 700709
5. 399455 6. 231497 7. 999993 8. 783093
9. 428454 10. 746362
B. 1. 85593 2. 178891 3. 113337 4. 250088
5. 172071 6. 161130 7. 218056 8. 123268
9. 205525 10. 129167

Exercise 3

- A.** 1. 32,560 2. 10,000 3. 2,10,510; 1,20,451
4. 23,320 5. 12,310 6. 0

Exercise 4

- A.** 1. 495 2. 1458 3. 169 4. 4803
5. 2837 6. 7153 7. 1908 8. 1072
9. 309

Exercise 5

- A.** 1. 43133 2. 31313 3. 74538 4. 32555
5. 43362 6. 56221
B. 1. 28300 2. 52954 3. 291 4. 44420
5. 8042 6. 8332
C. 1. 335426 2. 323033 3. 721952 4. 183947
5. 86448 6. 60547
D. 1. 13,105 2. 7,901 3. 15,639 4. 27,728
5. 57,925 6. 74,922 7. 38,03,810
8. 14,28,753 9. 7,68,520 10. 8,593

Chapter 3 : Exercise 1

- A.** 1.32895 2. 119352 3. 226331 4. 73948
B. 1. 0 2. 475 3. 23 4. 283 5. 0
C. 1.950 2. 12300 3. 730 4. 200 5. 4800

Exercise 2

- A.** 1. 23 2. 0 3. 4273 4. 4132 5. 32
6. 65 7. 273 8. 42 9. 1 10. 0
B. 1. 4536 2. 14168

Exercise 3

- A.** 1. 26,199 2. 2,06,615 3. 2,32,956



4. 1,60,576 5. 3,76,614 6. 3,04,876
7. 5,41,750 8. 13,14,456 9. 6,98,145
10. 25,58,226

- B.** 9,99,900 **C.** 99,89,001

Exercise 4

- A.** 1. 1,19,250 2. 2,76,640 3. 21,520
4. 2,22,750 5. 45,625 6. 1,01,748
7. 10,850 8. 2,20,150 9. 41,580
10. 1,71,550

Chapter 4 : Exercise 1

- A.** 1. 27 2. 118 3. 54 4. 99 5. 139
B. 1. $Q = 20, R = 13$ 2. $Q = 13, R = 10$
3. $Q = 44, R = 3$ 4. $Q = 35, R = 14$
5. $Q = 31, R = 12$ 6. $Q = 110, R = 7$
7. $Q = 88, R = 27$ 8. $Q = 179, R = 14$
C. 1. $Q = 2949, R = 16$ 2. $Q = 1218, R = 8$
3. $Q = 4385, R = 6$ 4. $Q = 1551, R = 2$
5. $Q = 1144, R = 3$

Exercise 2

- A.** 1. 30 2. 60 3. 140 4. 270 5. 1430
B. 1. 100 2. 700 3. 1500 4. 3000 5. 1000
C. 1. 20000 2. 4000 3. 3000 4. 40000
5. 20000

Exercise 3

- A.** 1. 252 seeds 2. ₹ 56 3. 113 sheets
4. 32 bottles 5. 15 teams 6. 322 apples

Chapter 5 : Exercise 1

- A.** To be filled by students.
B. 1. Common multiples – 12, 24
2. Common multiples – 24, 48
C. 28
D. 14, 21, 28, 42, 49
E. To be done by students.
F. 1. 18 2. 30 3. 30 4. 30 5. 600
6. 60 7. 90 8. 300 9. 180 10. 360

Exercise 2

- A.** To be done by students.
B. 1. 3, 6 2. 2, 3, 9 3. 3, 6, 10, 30
4. 1, 7, 9, 21 5. 1, 4, 5, 10, 20, 40
C. 1. 1, 2 2. 1, 2, 5, 10 3. 1, 5 4. 1, 2
5. 1, 2, 3, 6

Exercise 3

- A.** 1. 1, 3 2. 1, 2, 3, 6 3. 1, 2, 5, 10
4. 1, 5 5. 1, 5 6. 1, 3, 9
7. 1, 5 8. 1, 3
9. 1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 12 10. 1, 5
B. 1. 4 2. 5 3. 7 4. 2 5. 2 6. 3
7. 3 8. 2 9. 6 10. 5

Chapter 6 : Exercise 1

- A.** To be done by students.
B. To be done by students.
C. 1. 2 2. 2 3. 3 4. 97 5. 4

Exercise 2

- A.** 1. $2 \times 2 \times 5 \times 5$ 2. $2 \times 2 \times 3 \times 11$
3. $2 \times 2 \times 3 \times 3 \times 3$ 4. $2 \times 2 \times 3 \times 5$
5. $3 \times 3 \times 11$ 6. $2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 5$
B. 1. $2 \times 2 \times 7$ 2. $2 \times 2 \times 5$
3. 3×19 4. 2×41
5. $2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 3 \times 3$ 6. $2 \times 3 \times 13$
7. $2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2$ 8. 2×5
9. $2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 3 \times 5$ 10. $2 \times 3 \times 3 \times 3$

Exercise 3

- A.** 1. 15 2. 15 3. 4 4. 8 5. 15 6. 12
7. 65 8. 22 9. 2 10. 21
B. 1. 1, Coprime nos. 2. 15 3. 1, Coprime nos
4. 1, Coprime nos 5. 1, Coprime nos

Exercise 4

- A.** 1. 252 2. 60 3. 72 4. 56 5. 48
B. 600 7. 36 8. 360 9. 144 10. 100

Chapter 7 : Exercise 1

- A.** 1. $\frac{5}{7}$ 2. $\frac{23}{40}$ 3. $\frac{3}{8}$ 4. $\frac{17}{24}$ 5. $\frac{1}{3}$
B. 1. One half 2. One fourth 3. One third
4. Two third 5. Three fourth 6. One fifth
7. Four fifth 8. One tenth 9. Nine fifth
10. Two fifth
C. To be done by students.

Exercise 2

- A.** To be done by students.
B. 1. Yes 2. No 3. No 4. No 5. Yes
6. No 7. Yes 8. No
C. 1.3 2.20 3.42 4.49 5.18 6.16 7.14 8.5

Exercise 3

- A.** 1. i. $\frac{1}{8}$ ii. $\frac{2}{4}$ iii. $\frac{2}{11}$ iv. $\frac{6}{7}$ v. $\frac{2}{9}$
2. i. $\frac{3}{5}$ ii. $\frac{2}{3}$ iii. $\frac{7}{8}$ iv. $\frac{6}{7}$ v. $\frac{5}{12}$



- B.** 1. $\frac{9}{40}$ 2. $\frac{8}{23}$ 3. $\frac{12}{19}$ 4. $\frac{11}{35}$ 5. $\frac{3}{20}$
C. 1. $\frac{5}{14}$ 2. $\frac{1}{40}$ 3. $\frac{1}{2}$ 4. $\frac{3}{4}$ 5. $\frac{8}{19}$
D. 1. $\frac{1}{5}$ 2. $\frac{3}{4}$ 3. $\frac{1}{21}$ 4. $\frac{29}{31}$ 5. $\frac{2}{5}$

Exercise 4

- A.** 1. 2. 4.
B. To be done by students.
C. 1. ✓ 2. ✓ 3. ✗ 4. ✓ 5. ✗
D. 2. 3. 4. 7. 9. 10.
E. 1. $\frac{1}{5}$ 2. $\frac{1}{9}$ 3. $\frac{1}{8}$ 4. $\frac{1}{7}$
F. 1. $1\frac{8}{13}$ 2. $2\frac{6}{7}$ 3. $2\frac{1}{14}$ 4. $2\frac{8}{10} = 2\frac{4}{5}$ 5. $2\frac{1}{9}$
 6. $2\frac{2}{9}$ 7. $5\frac{5}{11}$ 8. $1\frac{3}{4}$ 9. $2\frac{8}{13}$ 10. $1\frac{4}{7}$
G. 1. $\frac{35}{15}$ 2. $\frac{25}{8}$ 3. $\frac{16}{7}$ 4. $\frac{23}{11}$ 5. $\frac{35}{17}$ 6. $\frac{18}{17}$
 7. $\frac{31}{13}$ 8. $\frac{49}{13}$ 9. $\frac{39}{7}$ 10. $\frac{42}{5}$

Exercise 5

- A.** 1. $\frac{4}{6}$ 2. $\frac{4}{9}$ 3. $\frac{2}{4}$ 4. $\frac{3}{5}$ 5. $\frac{2}{3}$ 6. $\frac{2}{8}$
 7. $\frac{2}{3}$ 8. $\frac{4}{6}$ 9. $\frac{9}{32}$ 10. $\frac{15}{18}$
B. 1. $\frac{1}{5}$ 2. $\frac{3}{9}$ 3. $\frac{1}{7}$ 4. $\frac{1}{3}$ 5. $\frac{1}{6}$ 6. $\frac{33}{39}$
 7. $\frac{1}{34}$ 8. $\frac{3}{32}$ 9. $\frac{2}{32}$ 10. $\frac{5}{12}$
C. 1. < 2. > 3. < 4. < 5. >
D. 1. $\frac{3}{4} < \frac{7}{8} < \frac{9}{10}$ 2. $\frac{5}{8} < \frac{7}{10} < \frac{4}{4}$
 3. $\frac{1}{5} < \frac{5}{15} < \frac{5}{6}$ 4. $\frac{3}{5} < \frac{7}{10} < \frac{3}{4}$
 5. $\frac{7}{12} < \frac{3}{4} < \frac{5}{6}$
E. 1. $\frac{5}{6} > \frac{2}{3} > \frac{1}{2}$ 2. $\frac{4}{5} > \frac{3}{4} > \frac{7}{10}$
 3. $\frac{9}{14} > \frac{11}{35} > \frac{2}{7}$ 4. $\frac{4}{6} > \frac{6}{12} > \frac{3}{8}$
 5. $\frac{5}{6} > \frac{6}{8} > \frac{3}{8}$

Exercise 6

- A.** 1. $\frac{7}{6}$ 2. $\frac{1}{7}$ 3. $\frac{5}{7}$ 4. $\frac{3}{4}$ 5. $\frac{2}{3}$ 6. $\frac{9}{10}$
 7. $\frac{5}{7}$ 8. $\frac{5}{6}$ 9. $\frac{2}{3}$ 10. $\frac{11}{12}$

- B.** 1. $\frac{2}{11}$ 2. $\frac{1}{2}$ 3. $\frac{2}{9}$ 4. $\frac{1}{3}$ 5. $\frac{1}{5}$
 6. $\frac{1}{6}$ 7. $\frac{2}{5}$ 8. $\frac{1}{8}$ 9. $\frac{5}{7}$ 10. 1
C. 1. $5\frac{1}{2}$ 2. $7\frac{3}{7}$ 3. $7\frac{3}{5}$ 4. 9 5. $4\frac{5}{7}$
D. 1. $1\frac{2}{7}$ 2. $2\frac{1}{3}$ 3. $2\frac{1}{3}$ 4. $1\frac{1}{5}$ 5. $4\frac{2}{11}$

Exercise 7

- A.** 1. $\frac{37}{50}$ 2. $1\frac{25}{102}$ 3. $1\frac{9}{130}$ 4. $\frac{26}{45}$ 5. $\frac{8}{9}$
 6. $\frac{17}{21}$ 7. $\frac{15}{22}$ 8. $1\frac{1}{14}$ 9. $\frac{32}{45}$ 10. $\frac{17}{21}$
B. 1. $\frac{1}{18}$ 2. $\frac{9}{110}$ 3. $\frac{5}{12}$ 4. $\frac{1}{15}$
 5. $\frac{31}{60}$ 6. $\frac{5}{42}$ 7. $\frac{1}{18}$ 8. $\frac{7}{22}$
 9. $\frac{17}{175}$ 10. $\frac{23}{84}$
C. 1. $32\frac{9}{10}$ 2. $23\frac{7}{36}$ 3. $8\frac{11}{12}$ 4. $2\frac{17}{35}$
 5. 6
D. 1. 15 2. $9\frac{5}{6}$ 3. $16\frac{1}{40}$ 4. $7\frac{5}{6}$ 5. 13

Exercise 8

- A.** 1. $1\frac{4}{5}$ 2. $\frac{4}{9}$ 3. $6\frac{2}{5}$ 4. $1\frac{2}{3}$
 5. $15\frac{1}{5}$ 6. $3\frac{3}{4}$
B. 1. $8\frac{2}{3}$ 2. $6\frac{3}{4}$ 3. 84 4. 45
C. To be done by students.
D. 1. $\frac{4}{35}$ 2. $\frac{1}{28}$ 3. $\frac{7}{120}$ 4. $\frac{1}{9}$ 5. $\frac{1}{12}$
 6. $\frac{1}{40}$ $\frac{1}{5}$ $\frac{5}{15}$ $\frac{5}{6}$
 7. $\frac{5}{18}$ 8. $\frac{1}{24}$ 9. $\frac{3}{10}$ 10. $\frac{1}{27}$

Chapter 8 : Exercise 1

- A.** 1. Four tenths
 2. One hundred ninety six and thirty-nine thousandths
 3. Fifteen and forty-two hundredths
 4. Twelve and six-hundred five thousandths
 5. Three hundred twenty-seven and five tenths



- B.** 1. Ten point one eight
2. Seven point zero seven seven
3. Thirty lakh seventy-four thousand fourteen point one three nine seven
4. Five hundred forty five point zero zero one
5. Two thousand four point zero two

- C.** 1. 0.6 2. 19.019 3. 56794.0822
4. 9610.03 5. 777.07 6. 0.0077

Exercise 2

- A.** 1. 3.1 2. 4.35 3. 7.268 4. 0.389
5. 0.37 6. 9.0064

B. To be done by students.

- C.** 1. Eight tenths 2. Eight hundredths
3. Eight thousandths
4. Eight ten thousandths

Exercise 3

- A.** 1. 1.92 2. 7.50 3. 87.76 4. 1.56
5. 164.304

- B.** 1. $4.7 > 4.07$ 2. $1.6 < 6.1$
3. $3.01 < 3.09$ 4. $3.06 < 3.60$
5. $85.58 > 58.85$ 6. $5.45 > 5.405$
7. $1.600 = 1.6$ 8. $85.51 > 83.31$

- C.** 1. 2.03, 2.3, 3.02, 3.2, 3.302
2. 5.069, 5.6, 5.906, 9.05
3. 23.056, 23.56, 23.650, 32.506, 32.6
4. 8.99, 17.099, 17.509, 17.905, 17.99
5. 1.009, 1.090, 1.099, 10.90, 11.90

Exercise 5

- A.** 1. 0.6 2. 0.75 3. 0.4 4. 0.2 5. 0.4
6. 0.48 7. 2.28 8. 5.4

- B.** 1. $\frac{357}{100}$ 2. $\frac{233}{50}$ 3. $\frac{57}{200}$ 4. $\frac{187}{100}$ 5. $\frac{39}{100}$
6. $\frac{3}{8}$ 7. $\frac{49}{20}$ 8. $\frac{51}{4}$

Exercise 4

- A.** 1. 4.890 2. 1.762 3. 42.94 4. 42.59
5. 100.181 6. 35.27 7. 421.42 8. 1879.94

- B.** 1. 6.70 2. 0.781 3. 7.466 4. 31.509
5. 16.38 6. 0.16 7. 10.936 8. 85.75

- C.** 1. 1.088 kg 2. 554.93 km 3. Gary 4. 16.4 m
5. 3.6 min 6. 3.55 litres

Exploring Science**Chapter 1 : Food Production in Plant**

- A.** 1. We get food, fuel and oxygen from plants.
2. The stalk or stem that connects the leaf to the plant is petiole.
3. Plants store their extra food in leaves, stems and roots.
4. (i) Mushrooms get their food from dead and decaying plants and animals.
ii) Dodder(Amarbel) get their food from other green plants through special roots penetrated in to the host plant.
iii) Cactus contains chlorophyll in its stem. The process of photosynthesis occur in its stem.
5. Plants use the food in a number of ways.
- For survival and growth.
- Repair worn-out cell and build new cells.

- B.** 1. A leaf is an outgrowth from a node on a plant stem.
2. The tip of a leaf opposite to the petiole is called apex.
3. Mushroom and Croton.

- C.** 1. ✓ 2. ✗ 3. ✓ 4. ✓

- D.** 1. iv 2. ii 3. iii

- E.** 1. Photo means light and synthesis means putting together.
2. The expanded portion of a leaf is lamina.
3. Chlorophyll is a green pigment that exists in cells.
4. The small openings of the lowest layer of cell.

Think it over[HOTS]

1. Process of photosynthesis cannot be done without light. So, the plant turn pale when it is kept in dark.
2. Yellow leaves will not have chlorophyll in them to prepare food on their own.

Chapter 2 : Adaptation in Plants

- A.** 1. Plants develop special features to adapt themselves to the surroundings. This process is adaptation.
2. Plants that grow on land are called terrestrial

plants. **Ex:** Pine tree, Spruce tree, Mango tree.

3. The types of aquatic plants are floating plants, emergent plants and totally submerged plants.

Floating plants **Ex:** Water Lilly

Emergent plants **Ex:** Cattail

Totally submerged plants **Ex:** Pond weed.

4. The plants which grow near the sea-shore in marshy areas. Mangrove trees have breathing roots.

5. As the cactus has no leaves loss of water is reduced during photosynthesis. The green fleshy stem contains chlorophyll and makes food. Long root stem spread out wide or go deep into the ground to absorb water even in deserts.

6. Coniferous trees grow in cold and hilly places. They have needle-like leaves. The needles are coated with wax which prevents the loss of water. The needle-like structure of leaves makes snow slide off easily.

B. 1. The plants that grow and remain in water are called Aquatic Plants.

2. The plants which eat insects are known as carnivorous plants.

3. The roots grow out of the soil and water to breathe are called breathing roots.

4. Teak and Rubber trees are evergreen.

C. 1. aquatic 2. Terrestrial 3. snow 4. Mangrove
5. cactus, palm

D. 1. ✓ 2. ✗ 3. ✓ 4. ✓ 5. ✓

E. 1. c 2. c 3. c 4. c

F. 1. INSECTIVOROUS 2. ADAPTATION
3. TERRESTRIAL 4. AQUATIC

G. 1. d 2. c 3. a 4. e 5. b

Think it over[HOTS]

1. The lack of leaves of cactus helps reduce water loss. Long root system of cactus spread out wide and deep into the ground to absorb water. But paddy plants have leaves and no long roots to grow in deserts.

Chapter 3 : Adaptation in Animals

A. 1. Adaptation means adjust according to environment.

2. All animals are adapted to live at a certain place. The place where an animal lives is called its habitat. Some habitats of different animals are desert animals. Polar animals, grassland animals.

3. Because they don't have a constant body temperature. They adjust themselves with the temperature of environment. During cold weather inactiveness occurs called hibernation.

4. Camel's feet are wide, so they can walk on sand more easily. It can travel for more than a week without drinking water and can last for several months without having food.

5. The distinct feature of animals enable them to protect themselves. **Ex.** Some insects copy the shape, colour and habits of other animals.

B. 1. The period of inactivity in amphibians in the hot and dry weather is called estivation.

2. The period of inactivity occurs in cold weather in amphibians is called hibernation.

3. Camouflage is method used by animals to blend their colour with the environment.

4. Organisms that live by drawing food from a host organism are called parasites.

5. The animals live on trees and tend to have long tails for maintaining their balance are arboreal animals.

C. 1. fur, fat 2. gills 3. water, land 4. shells
5. sleep

D. 1. ✗ 2. ✓ 3. ✓ 4. ✗ 5. ✓

E. 1. b 2. d 3. d

F. 1. d 2. c 3. a 4. b

Think it over[HOTS]

1. Arboreal animals usually have long tails to maintain their balance as they live on trees.

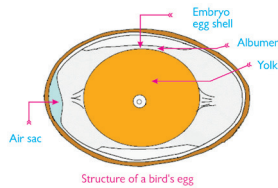
2. Dinosaurs could not adapt themselves according to their changing environments.



Chapter 4 : Reproduction in Animals

- A. 1. The process thought by which the living beings produce their young ones of their own kind is called 'reproduction'.
 2. In order to maintain life forms on the earth, each living being has to reproduce its own kind. Life cannot exist on the earth if living things do not reproduce.
 3. Some animals give birth to young ones and others lay eggs.
 4. Mammals feed their young ones, clean them, keep them safe until they learn to look after themselves.

5.



- B. 1. Mammals 2. Three stages 3. The mother bird keeps the egg warm by sitting on it. This process is called incubation.
 C. 1. pupa 2. yellow 3. Bat 4. spawn 5. tadpole
 D. 1. ✓ 2. ✓ 3. ✓ 4. ✓ 5. ✗
 E. 1. a 2. a 3. c F. 1. d 2. a 3. c 4. b

Think it over[HOTS]

1. A little chick is the own kind of its mother hen. So, it resembles its mother hen.
2. Many reptiles like snake and turtle do not care for their eggs or babies.

Chapter 5 : Food and Digestion

- A. 1. The process of breaking down food into a simple and soluble form so that the body can use it. This process is digestion.
 2. Water helps in digestion. It helps in dissolving nutrients that are to be used up by the body. Water regulates the body temperature.
 3. The strong muscles of the stomach use enzymes to further break down food into a usable form. Till this process stomach holds food.
 4. In small intestine food is broken down using enzymes released by the pancreas and bile from the liver. The contents of the small intestine start

out as semi-solid food end-up in a liquid form.
 5. The course of flushing out the undigested food through the Anus is known as defecate.

- B. 1. Egg, meat and fish are body building foods.
 2. Butter, ghee and nuts are energy giving foods.
 3. Anus.
 4. Sugar, starch and fibre are three main types of carbohydrates.
 C. 1. mouth 2. large 3. rectum 4. bile, fats
 5. gall bladder, pancreas, liver
 D. 1. ✓ 2. ✗ 3. ✗ 4. ✓ 5. ✓
 E. 1. a 2. c 3. c
 F. 1. d 2. c 3. a 4. b

Think it Over[HOTS]

1. Proteins are used by the body to make muscles, organs and other tissue such as skin and hair. So, proteins are needed to a child more than an old person.
2. Usually mangoes are unavailable in winter season. This crop is available in summer. But preservation of mangoes in way of canning through makes it possible.

Chapter 6 : Teeth and Dental Care

- A. 1. Incisors - These are eight. These are used for cutting and chopping.
 Canines - These are four. They help tear food.
 Premolars - These are also four. These are used for chewing and grinding food.
 Molars - There are eight molars in the mouth. They work closely with the tongue to help swallow food.
 2. At the age of 6 years, milk teeth start falling as they are not permanent. Permanent teeth replace them. So, milk teeth also called temporary teeth.
 3. Germs can grow and form a sticky yellow layer called plaque. To remove this plaque we have to brush our teeth properly.
 4. We should visit a dentist regularly for checkup.
 5. 1) Brush the teeth atleast twice a day.
 2) Rinse the mouth well after taking food.
 3) Clean the tongue to remove germs, which attack teeth.
 B. 1. 20 Teeth 2. 32 Teeth 3. Bicuspid teeth

4. There are 8 incisors and 4 canines are there in a permanent teeth set.
- C. 1. eight 2. incisors 3. calcium 4. enamel
- D. 1. ✓ 2. ✗ 3. ✗ 4. ✗
- E. 1. a 2. b 3. c
- F. 1. d 2. a 3. e 4. b 5. c

Think it Over[HOTS]

1. Incisors. 2. About 3,333 sets of teeth a shark will have in its life time. 50,000 total teeth in a maximum of 15 Rows in its entire life time.

Chapter 7 : The Right Clothes to Wear

- A. Basically the need of clothes are protecting our body from rough surfaces, insect bites, thorns and prickles. They protect us from ultraviolet surfaces of Sun, cold, dust and rain. Clothes are for social implications also.
2. People wear specific clothes to do specific tasks. This specific dress is known as uniform.
3. Natural fibres come from plants and animals. Synthetic fibres are Man-Made.
4. We wear dark-coloured clothes made of wool in winter.
5. Insects like moths and silver fish attack woollen clothes and silk clothes. So, they should be kept under the sun for some time.
- B. 1. i) Natural ii) Synthetic
2. i) Cotton ii) Linen
3. i) Sheep ii) Silkworm
4. i) Viscose ii) Acrylic
- C. 1. clothes 2. uniform 3. cotton 4. natural
- D. 1. ✗ 2. ✗ 3. ✗ 4. ✗ 5. ✓
- E. 1. b 2. c 3. b 4. d 5. b
- F. 1. e 2. d 3. a 4. b 5. c

Think it Over[HOTS]

1. Police, doctor, lawyer, soldier, post-man
2. Fibre blending

Social Studies

Chapter 1 : The Face of our Country

- A. a. A plateau is an elevated flat land at the top.
- b. A place of land which is surrounded by water on three sides is known as peninsula.
- c. A place of land which is surrounded by water on all sides is known an island.

- B. 1. India is located Asian Continent.
2. India is called a peninsula because the southern part of India is surrounded by three big water bodies.
3. There are 29 states and 7 union Territories in India.
4. The neighbouring Countries of India are Pakistan, Afghanistan, Nepal, Bhutan, China, Myanmar and Bangladesh.
5. The major physical divisions of India are
- i) The Himalayan Region
 - ii) The Northern Plains
 - iii) The Great Indian Desert
 - iv) The Southern Plateaus
 - v) The Coastal plains and islands.
- C. 1. Rajasthan 2. Delhi 3. South 4. Southern 5. Rivers
- D. 1. v 2. iii 3. iv 4. ii 5. i
- E. 1.iii 2. iii 3.ii 4. iii

Chapter 2 : The Northern Mountains

- A. a. Glacier means river of ice that moves slowly.
- b. The area at the foot hills of the Shiwalik range is called the Terai.
- c. Trees or bushes with green leaves through out the year.
- d. Low land between two mountains or hills known as valley.
- B. 1. The word'Himalaya' means 'the abode of snow'.
2. K₂ or Godwin Austin is the highest peak in the Himalayas in India.
3. Himalayas check the rain-bearing clouds coming from Siberia and these are responsible for causing rainfall in the plains during summer.
4. Farmers cut flat steps in mountain slopes to grow crops. This is known as terrace farming.
5. Himalayas are useful to us in many ways.
- i) It protects us from enemies at northern borders.
 - ii) It checks the rain bearing clouds coming from Siberia.
 - iii) It protects us from the cold winds blowing from the north.



iv) Several rivers originate in the Himalayas.

- C. 1. Mount Everest 2. Himachal 3. Gangotri
4. Himadri 5. Mountains
D. 1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. F
E. 1. v 2. iv 3. ii 4. i 5. iii
F. 1. Range 2. Glacier 3. Himadri 4. Terai
G. 1. ii 2. i 3. iii 4. iii

Chapter 3 : Life in the Northern Mountains

- A. a. The people of Jammu and Kashmir wear a loose shirt called Phiran.
b. 'Baku' is a long skirt wore by the woman of Sikkim.
c. Terai is an area at the foot hills of the Shiwalik Range.
- B. 1. Jammu and Kashmir, Himachal Pradesh, Uttarkhand, Sikkim, Arunachal Pradesh, Meghalaya, Nagaland, Manipur, West Bengal and some parts of Uttar Pradesh.
2. The Mughal Emperor Jahangir described the Kashmir valley as 'Heaven on Earth'.
3. Eid and Shivaratri are the main festivals of the people of Jammu and Kashmir.
4. Badrinath, Kedarnath, Haridwar, Gangotri and Yamunotri are some famous religious places located in Uttarakhand.
5. The eastern states of Arunachal Pradesh, Assam, Meghalaya, Nagaland, Manipur, Tripura and Mizoram are known as Seven Sisters.

- C. 1. Rouf 2. Nati 3. Dehradun 4. mask
5. Kashmir
D. 1. iv 2. v 3. i 4. ii 5. iii
E. 1. ii 2. i 3. i 4. iii

Chapter 4 : The Northern Plains

- A. a. A stream or a small river that flows into a longer river is known as tributary.
b. Delta means an area of flat land shaped like a triangle.
c. A basin is the total area watered by a river and its tributaries.
d. A large mass of ice formed by snow on mountain moving slowly down the slopes is known as Glacier.
- B. 1. The Northern plains called 'the food bowl

of India' because they are the granary of our country and they produce more food than any other part of our country.

2. The Northern plains so fertile due to the alluvium bring down by the Himalayan Rivers like Ganga, Yamuna, Ghaghara, Gandak, Kosi and Brahmaputra.

3. The Satluj Basin in the west, The Ganga Basin in the middle and The Brahmaputra Basin in the east.

4. Shillong, Guwahati and Dispur are the main cities of the Brahmaputra Basin.

5. Brahmaputra and Padma rivers form the biggest delta in the world.

- C. 1. Three 2. Allahabad 3. Brahmaputra 4. basin
5. Ganga
D. 1. iii 2. iv 3. v 4. ii 5. i
E. 1. ii 2. i 3. iii 4. ii

Chapter 5 : Life of the Northern Plains

- A. The domestication of
a) Bullocks and Cows are called cattle rearing.
b) Delhi is also known as Mini India.
- B. 1. Punjab, Haryana, Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, West Bengal, parts of Assam and Tripura and the National Capital Territory of Delhi constitute the Northern plains region.
2. Punjab men and women wear Lungi-Kurta Salwar-Kurta with a Dupatta as the traditional clothes.
3. Punjab and Haryana states which share Chandigarhas their capital.
4. Gurgaon and Faridabad are famous industrial towns of Haryana.
5. The rivers Ganga, Yamuna and Saraswati meet at Allahabad, which is known as Sangam.
- C. 1. Kolkata 2. Sutluj 3. Tripura 4. Bhangra
5. Chhath
D. 1. F 2. F 3. F 4. F 5. T
E. 1. ii 2. ii 3. ii 4. iii

Chapter 6 : The Great Indian Desert

- A. a. An area of land with very little rainfall and vegetation is known as 'Desert'.



- b. Nomads mean people who travel from one place to another place.
- c. A storm carrying a cloud of dust is called as dust storm.
- d. Hills of sand are known as Sand-Dunes.
- B. 1. A land which receives very little rain and it has very few plants and animals is called as desert.
2. The Great Indian Desert lie from the Aravalli hills in the east to the border of Pakistan in the west. It extends from Rann of Kachchh in the south-west to the border of Haryana.
3. The underground water comes up to the surface at few places and forms big pools. This is called as 'Oasis'.
4. The climate of the Great Indian Desert is very hot and dry during summer. The days are pleasant but the nights become very cold in winter. Rainfall is scanty.
5. Camel is the chief mode of transport in deserts and it can live for many days without food and water. So, the camel is called as the 'ship of the desert'.
- C. 1. Sheep 2. Africa 3. Oasis 4. colourful 5. Jaipur
- D. 1. F 2. F 3. T 4.F 5. F
- E. 1. iv 2. v 3. i 4. ii 5. iii
- F. 1.ii 2.ii 3.ii 4. ii

Chapter 7: Life in the Desert and the Central Plateau

- A. a) A group of people moving with a large number of camels is called a 'Caravan'.
- b) Oasis means a place in the desert where there is some water as well as vegetation.
- c) A festival which is celebrated at the tomb of Khwaja Moin-ud-din Chisti is known as Urs.
- B. 1. The life is tough in the desert area because of the scarcity of waer, transport and climate
2. Gangaur and Teej are the important festivals of Rajasthan.
3. Camel is the common means of transport in the desert region. Its milk and meat are serve as food for the people. So, the camel is an important people of desert region.
4. Rajasthani people wear colourful clothes.

The men wear dhoti, kurta and women wear a ghagra-choli.

- C. 1. Aravallis 2. pink 3. camel 4. Suratgarh 5. Black
- D. 1. iv 2. iii 3. ii 4. v 5. i
- E. 1. ii 2. i 3. iii 4. iii

Chapter 8 : The Southern Plateau

- A. a) A plateau is a high land which is almost flat at the top.
- b) Barrier built across the rivers are known as dams.
- c) A soil which is very good for growing cotton and oil seeds is known as Black soil.
- B. 1. Southern plateau is located to the south of the Northern Plains.
2. Most rivers in the Deccan plateau flow from west to east because the general slope of the land in the plateau is west to east.
3. The chota Nagpur is famous for coal mines.
4. Bengaluru, Hyderabad, Pune, Nagpur and Bhopal are the major cities of the plateau region
5. Iron and Mica minerals found in the southern plateau.
- C. 1. Jharkhand 2. Narmada 3. Hirakud 4. Krishna 5. Chota Nagpur.
- D. 1. F 2. T 3. F 4. F 5.F
- E. 1. iii 2. i 3. iv 4. v 5.ii
- F. 1. iii 2. ii 3. ii 4. iii

Chapter 9 : Life in the Southern Plateau

- A. a) Kannada is the language of Karnataka people.
- b) Molten matter thrown out by a volcano is known as lava.
- c) Pilgrimage means a Journey to a holy place for religious reasons.
- B. 1. Madhya Pradesh, Chhattisgarh, Maharashtra, Karnataka, Andhra Pradesh and Tamil Nadu.
2. The Kanha National Park and the Bandhavgarh National Park areas are the protected area.
3. The major crops of Chattisgarh are rice, linseed, betel and watermelon.
4. Mysore, Bijapur and Mangaluru are famous



cities of Karnataka.

5. The charminar, the Salar Jung Museum and a huge statue of Buddha in the Hussain Sagar Lake.
- C. 1. Chandela 2. Lavani
3. Andhra Pradesh 4. Bengaluru 5. Kanchipuram
- D. 1. F 2. T 3. T 4. T 5. T
- E. 1. ii 2. ii 3. iii 4. i

Chapter 10: The Coastal Plains and Islands

- A. a) Port is an area where ships stop to let goods and passengers on and off.
b) A narrow part of the Sea which enters the land is known as Gulf.
c) A small sea creature that lives in large groups are Corals.
d) A lagoon is a stretch of sea water separated by a narrow strip from the main sea. It is known as backwaters.
- B. 1. The Gujarath Coast, The Konkan Coast, The Malabar Coast, The Northern Circars and The Coramandal coast.
2. The extent of the eastern coastal plain is West Bengal in the north and ends at Kanya Kumari in the south.
3. The light houses built all along the Konkan coast because to warn the ships about the rocks and help them to sail safely.
4. Rice, banana, sugarcane, cloves, tobacco, coffee, pepper, coconut etc. are grown in the Malabar coast.
5. The land of Lakshdweep white because when polyps die their skeletons turn large masses of white limestone in Lakshadweep.
- C. 1. Coast 2. Lighthouses 3. Odisha 4. Mumbai
5. Andaman and Nicobar
- D. 1.ii 2. iv 3. v 4. iii 5. i
- E. 1. i 2. ii 3. iii 4. ii

Chapter 11:

Life in the Coastal Regions and Islands

- A. a) A coast is the land adjacent to the sea.
b) People who live in interior places or hill areas known as tribe.
c) An area where wild animals and birds are protected and encouraged to breed is called as

sanctuary.

- B. 1. Gujarat, Maharashtra, Goa, Karnataka, Kerala, West Bengal, Odisha, Andhra Pradesh, Tamilnadu and Puducherry.
2. Most people of Gujarat are traders and farmers.
3. The St. Xavier's church, The Mahalakshmi Temple and the Fort Aguada are the places of tourist interest in Goa.
4. Ratnagiri and Nagpur cities are famous for fruits in Maharashtra.
5. Barren Island and the cellular Jail in Port Blair are the places of interest in the Andaman and Nicobar Islands.
- C. 1. Gujarat 2. Ratnagiri 3. dairy 4. coir
5. island
- D. 1. F 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. F
- E. 1. i 2. i 3. ii 4. iii

Chapter 12: The Climate of Our Country

- A. a) The average weather condition of a place is known as climate.
b) Hot and dry winds blow in summer called as Loo.
c) Amount of water vapour present in the air is known as atmosphere.
d) Spring is a season of India.
- B. 1. The Climate of a place is the regular pattern of weather conditions for a long period of time.
2. i) The distance of a place from the equator.
ii) The distance of a place from the sea.
3. The Monsoon winds bring rainfall in India.
4. Hot and dry winds called Loo which blow in northern India in the afternoon.
5. We experience a pleasant weather in spring season in India.
- C. 1. mild 2. March 3. Himalayas 4. north
5. Spring
- D. 1. ii 2. iv 3. v 4. iii 5. i
- E. 1. ii 2. ii 3. i 4. iii



Chapter 13: The Soil

- A. a) Orchard is a piece of land on which fruit trees are grown.
b) Soil made from dead leaves and plants is called as Humus.
c) Having steps cut out of a hill so that crops can be grown there are Terraces.
d) Chemicals or natural substances added to increase soil fertility are known as Fertilizers.
- B. 1. Soil is the uppermost layer of the earth. It is formed when the rocks are broken into tiny particles by the actions of rain, wind, rivers and streams.
2. i) Alluvial Soil - Rice, Wheat
ii) Black Soil - Cotton, Oil seeds
iii) Red Soil - Millet, Maize
iv) Laterite Soil - Tea, Coffee
3. The black soil called as black cotton soil because the presence of lime and iron.
4. The process of carrying away of the fertile layer of soil is called soil erosion. The factors responsible for soil erosion are cutting down of trees and forests, over grazing the fields and faulty agricultural practices.
5. The process of preserving the soil from getting carried away is called soil conservation. By controlling grazing, making dams and reservoirs across rivers are the steps for the conservation of soil.
- C. 1. cotton 2. slow 3. clay 4. Alluvial soil
5. orchard
- D. 1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. T
- E. 1. iii 2. iii 3. iii 4. i

General Knowledge

Chapter 1 : Animal World

a) Amazing Animals

- 1) Okapi 2) Armadillo 3) Puma
4) Emu 5) Seal

b) Fishy Facts

- 1) 1, Cuttle Fish

- 2) 2, Flying Fish
3) 3, Porcupine Fish
4) 4, Butterfly Fish
5) 5, Piranha
6) 6, Trunk fish

c) Interesting Insects

A	B	M	O	S	Q	U	I	T	O	L
W	H	I	T	E	A	N	T	P	Q	O
B	C	D	E	M	O	T	H	S	T	C
U	B	E	E	T	L	E	M	N	O	U
G	C	R	I	C	K	E	T	U	V	S
H	O	U	S	E	F	L	Y	Q	R	T
K	L	A	D	Y	B	I	R	D	P	R

d) Beautiful Birds

- 1) Mocking bird 2) Pelican 3) Kiwi bird
4) Ostrich 5) emu 6) Penguins

e) Naturally, they Live here ...

- 1) Cold Region : Penguin, Polar bear
2) Sea and River : Walrus, Shark, Sea lion, Crocodile
3) Desert : Camel 4) Forest : Tiger, Gorilla

f) Superiors

- 1) 3, Cheetah 2) 7, Pygmy Shrew
3) 7, Whale Shark 4) 5, Humming bird
5) 2, Komodo Dragon 6) 5, Fairy Fly Wasp
7) 8, Goby 8) 4, Dragon fly
9) 1, African elephant

g) Let's Protect the Wild

- 1) Uttaranchal 2) Uttar Pradesh 3) Gujarat
4) Tamil Nadu 5) Jharkand 6) West Bengal
7) Madhya Pradesh 8) Assam 9) Assam
10) Andhra Pradesh 11) Kerala 12) Rajasthan

h) Say 'Yes' or 'No'

- 1) Yes 2) No 3) Yes 4) Yes 5) No

Chapter 2 : Plant World

a) Name the Plant

- 1) Pine tree 2) Bamboo 3) Palm tree
4) Peepal tree 5) Willow 6) Teak tree
7) Tamarind tree 8) Mulberry



b) Name the Leaf

- 1) Ashoka 2) Banana 3) coconut 4) Lemon
- 5) Lotus 6) Tulsi 7) Peepal 8) Papaya
- 9) Neem

c) Blooming Beauties



d) Fruity Food

- 1) B 2) A 3) D 4) C 5) E 6) F

Chapter 3 : Our Environment

b) Environment Friendly

- 1) 2 2) 4 3) 3 4) 5 5) 8 6) 9 7) 1 8) 7 9) 6



c) Environment Words

- 1) deforestation 2) soil erosion 3) ozone
- 4) acid rain 5) pollution 6) global warming
- 7) habitat 8) conservation 9) extinct
- 10) atmosphere

Chapter 4 : Language and Literature

a) Similes

- 1) needle 2) ice 3) cark 4) post 5) rose
- 6) giraffe 7) owl 8) air 9) button 10) barrel

b) It is said so ...

- 1) is only skin deep 2) leads to Rome
- 3) so you reap 4) catches the worm
- 5) begins at home 6) wins the race
- 7) is not gold 8) is the index of mind
- 9) saves nine 10) is worth two in bush

c) Same Sound, but how different !

- 1) bear 2) bare 3) heel 4) heal
- 5) knew 6) quiet 7) scene 8) dye
- 9) die 10) deer





ANSWERS (CLASS - 4 / SEMESTER - II)

Now Easy English

Chapter 1 : Father of the Nation

Reading

1. Gandhiji's full name was Mohandas Karamchand Gandhi.
2. Gandhiji is called the father of the nation as with his courage hardwork, non-violence and love we won our freedom.
3. Gandhi traveled to England to study law.
4. Gandhiji used non-violence as his weapon toward the fight against freedom.

Vocabulary

1. Father of the Nation is a term used by many countries to describe a political or symbolic leader;
2. of stimulation "a sensation of touch";
3. Not dependent; free; not subject to control by others;
4. Physical force exerted for the purpose of violating, damaging, or abusing: crimes of violence.;
5. Produced within the country;
6. a coarse homespun cotton cloth made in India.

Grammar

1. who; 2. which; 3. whom; 4. whose;
5. whose; 6. which.

Chapter 2 : The Unsinkable Ship

Reading

- A.1. Everyone thought that the Titanic could never sink. They called her 'the unsinkable ship';
2. The ship's builders were so sure of this that they put only a few Life-boats on the ship.
 3. California was only twenty miles away, but she did not receive the Titanic's messages. Her radio was turned off, and the radio operator was asleep.
 4. The sinking of the Titanic made people think harder about the safety of passengers on ships.
 5. It was decided that all ships must have enough room in their life-boats to carry everyone on board.
- B. 1. False; 2. True; 3. False; 4. False; 5. True.

Vocabulary

1. Crew; 2. Deck; 3. Life-boats; 4. Ice bergs;
5. Dive; 6. Submarine.

Pronunciation

1. steady; 2. cheese; 3. pepper; 4. ice; 5. tidy;
6. tough; 7. sound; 8. beautiful.

Grammar

1. woke; 2. ate; 3. walked; 4. boarded; 5. liked;
6. played.

Chapter 3 : The Kabuliwala

Reading

1. Mini was afraid of the Kabuliwala as she thought he would carry her off in his sack;
 2. Mini got over her fear for her father encouraged her to speak to the Kabuliwala. As soon as she spoke to the Kabuliwala, he won her confidence by his way of talking;
 3. The Kabuliwala was arrested for he had committed a crime by killing someone;
 4. The Kabuliwala was surprised to see Mini for she had grown up and was getting married. He always thought Mini to be a small girl;
 5. Mini's father took out a hundred rupee note-the money set aside for the wedding lights-and gave it to kabuliwala and told to return back his own country,
- Answer the second part in your own words.

Vocabulary

1. Wonderful; 2. Actually; 3. Largest;
4. Brighter; 5. Colourful
6. Likeable; 7. Sharper.

Grammar

1. Does Praveen teach well?;
2. Does the driver drive carefully?;
3. Is the strawberry sweet?;
4. Is he hardworking?;
5. Did the dog bark at strangers?;
6. Does the Moon rotate around the Earth?;
7. Do you know him?;

Pronunciation

1. Though; 2. Tough; 3. Bought; 4. Cough;
5. Rough;
6. Taught; 7. Laughed.

Chapter 4 : Sinbad the Sailor and the Valley of the Diamonds

Reading

1. Sinbad lived in Baghdad. He lived in a beautiful big house. The streets of Baghdad were hot and dusty - but in the house Sinbad lived it was cool and pleasant.
2. It was called the valley of diamonds because



it had diamonds all around the island.

3. The snakes were enormous. The smallest of them could swallow an elephant.

4. In the mountains high above the Valley of the Diamonds, great eagles have their nests. Every year, when the eagles hatch their young, clever merchants come to these mountains with big chunks of meat. The merchants throw these pieces of meat down into the Valley of the Diamonds. They throw them hard, so that some diamonds will get stuck in the meat. The eagles swoop down. They carry the meat-and the diamonds along with it-up to their nests, to feed their young.

5. Sinbad had tied an enormous chunk of meat to his back with his turban. Then he lay with his face down to the stony ground and waited for the eagle to lift him up along with the meat piece.

6. No, after returning back home he kept planning to sail.

7. Answer in your own words.

Vocabulary

1. put out; 2. throw away; 3. turn off; 4. believe in; 5. Put on; 6. switch on.

Grammar

1. will; 2. shall; 3. may; 4. might; 5. may; 6. shall

Chapter 5 : The Velvet Shoe

Reading

1. The above line is taken from the lesson Velvet shoe.

2. The words were said by Tenali Raman to Sri Krishnadevaraya.

3. The Maharaja stressed that people cannot be fooled easily where as challenge for Tenali Raman was to prove that people believe anything.

4. As he was waiting for right opportunity during the King's marriage.

5. Yes the speaker did succeed in completing the challenge.

6. Answer in your own words.

Grammar

1. finished; 2. had already started; 3. wrote; 4. found; 5. lost.

Chapter 6 : The Dog and the Wolf

Reading

1. The wolf was not happy as compared to the

dog he was slim and he could not find food easily like the dog.

2. The dog promised to help the wolf by giving his a place to stay with in his house.

3. The mastiff said that he had to wear a chain around his neck and guard the house from thieves. The dog also dint mind wearing the chain.

4. The wolf refused to live with the mastiff as he did not want to abide by the rules.

5. Write in your own words.

Grammar

1. bright, brighter; 2. fastest; 3. thinner; 4. hardest.

Grammar

Chapter 1 : Past Simple ... - d/ -ed/ - ied

Exercises

- A. 2. cleaned 3. climbed 4. was danced
5. washed
- B. 2. She cleaned the window yesterday.
3. They walked in the park last saturday.
4. We visited Jack yesterday.
5. He studied English last weekend.
- C. 1. cooked, painted, opened
2. loved, phoned , lived
3. tried, fried, cried
4. read,slept, ran,saw,swan,taught,ate
- D. 2. We cleaned the classroom yesterday.
3. I brushed my teeth last night.
4. My mother washed the dishes yesterday.
5. He climbed a mountain last Sunday.
6. We went picnic on last Friday.
7. She taught us English.

Chapter 2 : Past Simple ... did/ didn't

Exercises

- A. 3. No, baby didn't / Baby laughed.
4. No, he didn't. He read newspaper.
5. Yes, she cooked dinner.
6. No, it didn't. It slept.
- B. 2. Did she wash her clothes last night ?
She didn't wash her clothes last night.
3. Did he visit his uncle last weekend.
He didn't visit his uncle last weekend.
4. Did the dog play in the garden ?



- The dog didn't play in the garden.
5. Did Mary and her sister paint the house ?
Mary and her sister didn't paint the house.
- C. 1. You slept yesterday.
You didn't sleep yesterday.
2. He took rest.
He didn't take rest.
3. She came to my house.
She didn't come to my house.

Chapter 3 : Object Pronouns ... - me/you/ us

Exercises

- A. 2. it 3. it 4. us
- B. 2. us 3. me, him 4. you
- C. 1.1 2. 2 3.1 4.1 5.2 6.2
- D. 2. Do you know him ?
3. She needs an umbrella
4. Please, bring us cakes

Chapter 4 : Possessive Pronouns ... mine / yours / ours

Exercises

- A. 2. ours 3. her 4. yours 5. mine 6. theirs
- B. 2. ours 3. hers 4. yours
- C. 2. It is her doll. The doll is her
3. They are Bob and Max's shoes.
The shoes are Bob and Max's shoes.
4. They are his glasses.
The glasses are his.
5. It is my brother's bedroom.
The bed room is my brother's.
- D. 1. a 2. a 3. c 4. a 5. c

Explore Math

Chapter 1 : Exercise 1

- A. 1. 10 2. 40 3. 30 4. 20 5. 70
6. 40 7. 100 8. 70 9. 80 10. 10
- B. 1. 90 2. 50 3. 60 4. 120 5. 350
6. 510 7. 770 8. 2670
- C. 1. 800 2. 300 3. 500 4. 100 5. 600
6. 1000 7. 800 8. 3000
- D. 1. 10,000 2. 3000 3. 5000 4. 5000
5. 14,000 6. 26,000
- E. 1. 290, 300 2. 3980, 4000
3. 4670, 4700
4. 600, 600 5. 9710, 9700

Exercise 2

- A. 1. 810 2. 1220 3. 700 4. 1560 5. 620
6. 680 7. 1430 8. 780

- B. 1. 130 2. 90 3. 150 4. 70 5. 30
6. 60 7. 50 8. 40

Chapter 2 : Exercise 1

- A. 1. 500 g 2. 2000 g 3. 350 g 4. 200 g
5. 1500 ml 6. 600 ml
- B. 1. 23000 2. 0.679 3. 2345 4. 6780
5. 1200 6. 2750 7. 56000 8. 239.888
- C. 1. 560 dg 2. 0.45 kg 3. 34500 dg
4. 56.7 kg 5. 230000 dg 6. 40 kg 7. 2320 dag
8. 340034 mg
- D. 1. 130 ml 2. 218.77 dl 3. 345.0 l
4. 9813 cl 5. 1.2 dal 6. 450000 cl
7. 7.090 dal 8. 15231 dl

Exercise 2

- C. 1. 13 km 7 m 2. 47 km 308 m 3. 3501 km
200 m 4. 75 km 85 m 5. 142 km 100 m
6. 90 km 30 m 7. 750 km 750 m
8. 950 km 500 m 9. 101 km 83 m
- D. 1. 149 km 450 m 2. 408 km 100 m
3. 104 km 950 m 4. 20 km 05 m
5. 7 km 13 m 6. 8 km 45 m
- E. 1. 21 l 595 ml 2. 38 l 455 ml
3. 3 l 772 ml 4. 23 l 237 ml
5. 36 l 550 ml 6. 5 l 621 ml
- F. 1. 1 l 779 ml 2. 6 l 222 ml
3. 16 l 205 ml 4. 4 l 204 ml
5. 10 l 519 ml 6. 2 l 240 ml
- G. 1. 6 kg 961 g 2. 5 kg 532 g
3. 12 kg 922 g 4. 19 kg 032 g
5. 38 kg 386 g 6. 41 kg 428 g
- H. 1. 12 kg 085 g 2. 3 kg 178 g
3. 4 kg 772 g 4. 5 kg 348 g
5. 8 kg 093 g 6. 3 kg 268 g

Exercise 3

- A. 1. 282 kg 480 g 2. 618 l 800 ml
3. 549 km 472 m 4. 381 km 960 m
5. 435 kg 200 g 6. 91 l 380 ml
- B. 1. 5 l 2 ml 2. 3 km 76 m
3. 6 kg 20 g 4. 51 km 130 m
5. 53 kg 90 g 6. 60 km 124 m

Chapter 3 : Exercise 1

- A. 1. 2:15 2. 1:30 3. 7:15
- B. 1. 7:15 2. 12:45 3. 3:15 4. 6:30
5. 8:15 6. 11:15 7. 1:30 8. 9:15

Exercise 2

- A. 1. 2:30 2. 3:10 3. 6:35 4. 10:15



5. 3:30 6. 11:50

- B.1.** 14:00 2. 18:00 3. 13:00 4. 16:00

5. 20:00 6. 14:15 7. 22:45 8. 12:35

9. 15:00 10. 17:05

- C.1.** 15:00 2. 17:00 3. 13:00 4. 16:15

5. 22:00 6. 13:30 7. 18:45 8. 23:15

9. 8:00 10. 17:15

Exercise 3

- A.1.** 5:38 2. 6:33 3. 8:51 4. 10:05
5. 7:08

- B.1.** 3:11 2. 1:33 3. 1:35 4. 4:49 5. 1:84

- C.1.** 3:58:09 2. 9:10:12 3. 0:59:42
4. 8:16:41 5. 3:09:49

D.

1:30 to 2:15	45 min
2:10 to 2:30	20 min
3:15 to 3:45	30 min
5:50 to 6:10	20 min
10:45 to 11:20	35 min
3:00 to 4:30	1hr 30 min = 90 min

Exercise 4

- A.1.** Train 1 2. Train 3 3. 47 min 4. Train 3
5. 28 min 6. 1 hr :17 min fast 7. Train 3
8. 11:48 9. Train 2 10. 28 min

- B.1.** 11:55a.m. 2. 1 hr 15 min 3. 55 min
4. 10:30 a.m.

- C.1.** 2J 106 - 2 hrs 05 min 2. 2J 113 - 35 min
3. 2J 189 - 1 hr 20 min 4. 2J 198 - 3 hr 10 min
5. 2J 190 - 3 hr 30 min

D.

Blueberry ice-cream parlour	10:30	1:00	3:20
Evergreen Park	10:40	1:10	3:30
Public Library	10:50	1:20	3:40
Shopping Mall	11:00	1:30	3:50

Exercise 5

- A.1.** 600 min 2. 154 min 3. 225 min 4. 115 min
5. 360 min

- B.1.** 2 hr 18 min 2. 6 hr 3. 4 hrs 07 min
4. 1 hr 15 min 5. 7 hrs 36 min

- C.1.** 1420 s 2. 2734 s 3. 24720 s 4. 28024 s
5. 2135 s

- D.1.** 34 min 20 s 2. 39 min 01 s 3. 24 min 25 s
4. 51 min 5 s 5. 40 min 54 s

Exercise 6

- A.1.** 44 days 2. 34 days 3. 42 days 4. 112 days

5. 184 days

- B.1.** 43 weeks 4 days 2. 17 weeks 6 days
3. 29 weeks 2 days 4. 3 weeks 4 days
5. 12 weeks 6 days

- C.1.** 30 months 2. 40 months 3. 48 months
4. 70 months 5. 44 months

- D.1.** 3 years 4 months 2. 2 years 1 month
3. 6 years 5 months 4. 8 years 2 months
5. 1 year 11 months

Chapter 4 : Exercise 1

- A.1.** 1. Perpendicular 2. Parallel 3. Parallel
4. Intersecting 5. Parallel 6. Intersecting

Exercise 2

To be done by students

Exercise 3

- A.1.** $\angle M$, sides ML, MN 2. $\angle R$, sides RS, RQ
3. $\angle D$, sides DC, DE 4. $\angle T$, sides TS, TU

- B.1.** $\angle EDC$, $\angle D$, $\angle 3$ 2. $\angle CFE$, $\angle F$, $\angle 4$
3. $\angle EFG$, $\angle F$, $\angle 1$ 4. $\angle HIJ$, $\angle I$, $\angle 3$

- C.1.** $\angle 6$, $\angle 5$, $\angle HVJ$ 2. $\angle 2$, $\angle 3$, $\angle DVF$

Exercise 4

- A.1.** 1. Obtuse 2. Acute 3. Right 4. Acute
5. Acute 6. Obtuse 7. Acute 8. Acute

- B.1.** a, e, f 2. b, d 3. c

Exercise 5

- A.1.** Radius, Diameter, Centre
2. O, OM or ON, MN 3. O, OP, OR, OQ, PQ

- B.1.** AE 2. O 3. BC 4. OC, OB, OD

Chapter 5

Exercise 1

- A.1.** 15 cm 2. 32 cm 3. 62 cm 4. 14 km
5. 12 m 6. 34 cm 7. 60 cm 8. 58 cm
9. 52 cm 10. 26 cm 11. 30 cm 12. 48 cm

13. 32.5 cm

- B.1.** 18 cm 2. 20 ft 3. 32 m 4. 480 m
5. 640 m 6. 1210 m

Exercise 2

- A.1.** 54 mm² 2. 40 cm² 3. 300 m² 4. 36 m²

- B.1.** 15 cm² 2. 28 cm² 3. 6 m² 4. 240 cm²
5. 143 cm²

- C.1.** 9 cm² 2. 36 cm² 3. 144 cm²
4. 49 m² 5. 625 cm²

- D.1.** 50 m² 2. 300 m² 3. 1225 m² 4. 1150 m²
5. 4000 cm² 6. 900 cm²

Chapter 6 : Exercise 1

- A.1.** c 2. a 3. Rectangle: skip by 9; Triangle: skip by 11; Square: skip by 10

2. First dip the burnt finger in cold water and keep in for some time. Then apply burnol such as burn-cure creams.

Chapter 2 : Our House

- A. 1. We all need houses to live in as they protect us from heat, cold, rain, wild animals and thieves.
2. In remote areas and mountains, houses are made of locally available material. Such houses are called Kutcha houses.
3. A caravan is a house of wheels. It is a movable house. It can be parked anywhere like a car.
4. Eskimos are the people live in the coldest regions. In winters these regions are covered with snow. So, Eskimos build igloos from the blocks of snow or ice.
5. A good house should have all the things need to make it safe and comfortable. It should have doors and windows to let the fresh air and sunlight in. It should have enough sunlight to kill germs and keep the rooms dry.
- B. 1. Huts 2. Caravan is of wheels.
3. We need doors and windows in a house to let the fresh air and sunlight in. 4. Because phenyl is a germ killer.
- C. 1. stilt 2. dustbin 3. snow 4. flooded 5. house
- D. 1. ✗ 2. ✓ 3. ✓ 4. ✗
- E. 1. d 2. a 3. d 4. d 5. d
- F. 1. e 2. a 3. d 4. b 5. c

Think it Over[HOTS]

1. In large lake areas people live in water only in floating house boats. Tourists from all over the world come and stay in house boats.
2. Diaster victims live in tents.

Chapter 3 : The Changing Weather

- A. 1. Weather refers to the short-term atmospheric conditions that we see at any one moment.
2. Temperature, air pressure, moisture, cloud and wind are the elements that determine the weather condition.
3. When air moves, it is called wind and a strong wind is called storm.
4. Wind blows from the sea towards the land is known as sea breeze.
5. Condensation is the opposite of evaporation. It takes place when water vapour in the air condenses from its gaseous state, back into its liquid state.

- B. 1. Humidity. 2. Atmosphere 3. A very strong wind is called storm. 4. Upper surface of ground water below which soil is saturated with water that fills up all cracks is known.
- C. 1. Carbondioxide, ozone 2. Land breeze
3. Sea breeze 4. air 5. dew point
- D. 1. ✓ 2. ✗ 3. ✓ 4. ✗
- E. 1.b 2. c 3. b

Think it OVER[HOTS]

1. Air consists of many gases. It's a mixture of nitrogen, oxygen, carbondioxide. When the air moves it is called wind.
2. Fog is a cloud that gets formed near the surface of the earth.

Chapter 4 : Matter and Materials

- A. 1. Object that occupies space and has weight is called "Matter".
2. Atoms are the common properties of Matter.
3. Molecules are arranged in a regular pattern in a solid touching each other.
4. Solid,liquid and gas are 3 different states of water.
5. a) Liquid water changes to solid ice at temperature below zero degree celsius. This process is called freezing.
b) When ice is heated, it changes into water. This process is called melting.
c) When water is boiled at high temperature, it gets changed into water vapour. This process is called evaporation.
d) When water vapour changes into water on cooling, it is called condensation.
e) The process by which solid directly gets turned into the gaseous form on heating is called sublimation.
- B. 1. Matter. 2. Solid 3. Solid iodine 4. Soda
5. Water
- C. 1. space, weight 2. atoms 3. molecule
4. solid,liquid, gas 5. regular 6. attractive
7. matter
- D. 1. ✓ 2. ✗ 3. ✗ 4. ✓ 5. ✗
- E. 1.b 2. b 3. c 4. a 5. c

Think it OVER[HOTS]

1. Gases spread out quickly to fill the space available to them. So the smell of roses spreads out and fills up the room.
2. Gas can be stored in a container by turning it



into liquid.

Chapter 5 : Work, Force and Energy

- A. 1. A force is a push or pull. It is necessary to move or stop, change direction.
 2. The force of the ground which pulls all towards it is called gravity.
 3. Friction is an invisible force that acts when two things rub against each other. It is useful to reduce or stop the motion of an object.
 4. Work is said to be done only when an object moves over a distance applying force, as per the definition in words of science.
 5. Wedge is a simple machine used for pushing two objects apart. It is made of two inclined planes.
 6. Energy is the ability to do work. Sources of energy are Solar energy, Atomic energy, Geothermal energy.
- B. 1. gravity 2. friction 3. knife 4. the sun 5. energy.
- C. 1. force 3. Machines more 4. Leaver 5. wind 6. wedge 7. buoyany
- D. 1. X 2. ✓ 3. X 4. ✓ 5. ✓ 6. ✓
- E. 1. c 2. c 3. b 4. b

Think it OVER[HOTS]

- The method of using scissors would be advised. Because using scissors is easier than using hands in tearing a paper. More over scissors cut the paper in a lining order which hands cannot.
- The action of playing cricket needs more energy because it needs the work of all organs when running, catching, throwing, picking, handling and shouting, doing homeworks needs none.

Chapter 6 :Our Planet Earth

- A. 1. Crust is the hard outer layer made of solid rock which the earth consists of.
 2. The movement of the earth around itself an invisible axis is known as rotation. It takes 24 hours to finish one complete rotation to the earth.
 3. The movement of the earth around the sun is revolution. One revolution takes 365 days and 6 hours or 1 year.
 4. The causes of change in seasons are due to movement of the earth that are in two ways.
 1. rotation; 2. revolution. These two movements create variations in temperature, weather and

seasons.

5. Air is a synonym for atmosphere. The atmosphere of our planet is made up of three primary gases that are oxygen, nitrogen and Argon.
- B. 1. The line at which the earth and the sky appears to meet is called the Horizon.
 2. Ferdinand Magellan 3. Crust, core, Mantle.
 4. If stand at any point of the earth's surface and look up, will see a huge bowl which is called sky.
- C. 1. Mantle 2. rotation 3. orbit 4. sun
- D. 1. X 2. X 3. ✓ 4. ✓ 5. ✓
- E. 1. a 2. c 3. b 4. a
- F. 1. d 2. a 3. e 4. b 5. c

Think it OVER[HOTS]

- Rotation of the earth causes day and night.

Chapter 7 : Study of Nature

- A. 1. The cutting down of trees without planting others in their place is called deforestation.
 2. For every tree that is cut, three trees should be planted. All must reduce dependence on charcoal as a source of fuel, instead of which use wind power or solar energy.
 3. Pollution means the addition of harmful substances cause harm or discomfort to human beings. The harmful substances are called pollutants.
 4. Pollutants from factories, refineries and water treatment plants, pesticides, fertilisers from agricultural fields; addition of soaps, detergents and chemicals; garbage and thrown dead bodies; Human sewage; bathing of animals, washing clothes lead to water pollution.
 5. Reduce, reuse and Recycle are three methods to control pollution.
- B. 1. The harmful substances are called pollutants.
 2. Planting trees in large numbers is called afforestation.
 3. World Environment Day is celebrated on June 5 every year.
 4. The addition of harmful substances like sulphur dioxide, carbon dioxide, carbon monoxide etc. into air is called air pollution.
 5. The addition of harmful substances like pesticides, fertilizers, garbage, dead bodies into water is known as water pollution.



C. 1. deforestation 2. planting 3. garbage 4. use and throw

D. 1. ✓ 2. ✓ 3. ✗

E. 1. b 2. c 3. a

Think it OVER[HOTS]

1. Pollutants from factories, refineries and water treatment plants; pesticides, fertilisers from agricultural fields; addition of soaps, detergents and chemicals; garbage and thrown dead bodies; human sewage; bathing of animals, washing clothes lead to water pollution.

Social Studies

Chapter 1: Our Forests and Wildlife

- A. a) A large area of land covered with trees is called as Forest.
b) In danger of becoming extinct is known as Endangered.
c) Forests which are found in the land is flooded by sea-water are known as marshy forests.
d) Sanctuary is a place where birds and animals are kept and protected.
- B. 1. A large area of land which covered with trees bushes, shrubs, grasses and creepers is called as forest.
2. Forests are useful to us in many ways.
i) They supply oxygen to the air.
ii) They make environment clear and pleasant.
iii) They control the floods.
iv) They provide shelters to the wild animals.
3. Evergreen forests, Deciduous forests, Coniferous forests, Thorn forests and Tidal Forests.
4. The Chipko Movement is led by Sundarlal Bahuguna. The slogan of this movement was, 'If you cut one tree; plant atleast three'.
5. Animals and birds living freely in natural condition is called wild life. Our Government has taken the following steps to protect wild animals.
i) No one is allowed to hunt animals and birds in sanctuaries.
ii) Sanctuaries are protected by special forest guards.
- C. 1. Forest 2. Deciduous 3. Thorn 4. Tidal
5. Odisha
- D. 1. F 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. F
- E. 1. iii 2. iv 3. v 4. ii 5. i

F. 1. ii 2. iii 3. i 4. iii

Chapter 2: Our Water Wealth

- A. a) Dams have been constructed across big rivers of our country for many purposes is called as Multi purpose project.
b) Electricity production by using the energy of water falling from height is called hydroelectricity.
c) Irrigation means supply water to land and crops using pipes, small canals etc.
- B. 1. Wells, Tube wells, Canals and Tanks are the sources of water.
2. We cannot use sea water for drinking because it tastes salty.
3. Tanks are one of the oldest means of Irrigation. States like Karnataka, Andhra Pradesh and Tamil Nadu people use this.
4. Construction of dams various uses are known as multipurpose projects.
5. The Bhakra Nangal dams is the biggest Dam in India. Farakka Barrage, Nagarjunasagar Dam, Hirakud Dam are some of the major Dams in India.
- C. 1. Rain 2. three-fourths 3. electricity 4. Odisha
5. canal
- D. 1. F 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. T
- E. 1. iii 2. iii 3. iii 4. iii

Chapter 3: Our Mineral Wealth

- A. a) A mixture of rocks, soil and minerals is known as ore.
b) Sun, wind and water are known as inexhaustible sources.
c) Hard and shiny material used to make many useful things are known as metals.
d) Minerals are useful things which dug out from under the earth.
- B. 1. The useful things dug out from under the earth are called minerals. **Ex.** Iron, Gold, Bauxite and Mica.
2. Mineral oil is known as liquid Gold. We get petrol, diesel, kerosene, cooking gas, grease etc. from it.
3. i) Iron - Machines, engines, knives and scissors.
ii) Bauxite - Utensils and electric wires.
iii) Gold-Ornaments.
4. Coal is formed over millions of years from the dead remains of the plant. It is used in factories and trains.



5. Minerals take thousands of years to form which are known as exhaustible. Inexhaustible source of energy is called renewal energy.

- C. 1. wealth 2. bauxite 3. mercury 4. coal
5. wind
- D. 1. iii 2. v 3. iv 4. i 5. ii
- E. 1. i 2. iii 3. iii 4. i

Chapter 4: Our Livestock and Human Resources

- A. a) The state of being poor is known as poverty.
b) Veterinary means connected with the medical treatment of sick animals.
c) Bullocks and cows are called cattle.
- B. 1. The Domestic animals that we tame for our use are our livestock.
2. A new scheme which is introduced by government for the development of fishing and fisheries is known as blue revolution.
3. A scheme which is introduced to increase the production of milk is called as white revolution.
4. The resources which is mostly needed for the proper uses of soil, water, mine and livestock is known as Human resources.
5. The reasons for poverty in our country
i) Rapid growth of population.
ii) Problems related to food, clothing, drinking water, health and education.
- C. 1. Animals 2. Blue 3. developing 4. Green
5. India
- D. 1. F 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. T
- E. 1.ii 2. iv 3. v 4. i 5. iii
- F. 1. iii 2.iii 3. i 4. i

Chapter 5: Our Agricultural and Industries

- A. a) An industry is the place or factory where things are provided.
b) A building and machinery for purifying metal or sugar.
c) The crops which are grown for sale purpose are known as cash crops.
- B. 1. Cereal crops which are grown for food grains but the cash crops which are grown for sale purposes.
2. The crops grown in the arrival of monsoon are known as Kharif crops. The crops grown in the arrival of winter season known as Rabi Crops.
3. An industry is the place or factory where

things are produced. The facilities needed near an industry are raw materials, power, market, transport and suitable climate.

4. Large scale industries are the industries where a large number of people work together to manufacture goods on a large scale. Small scale industries are the industries where a small number of workers are employed to manufacture goods.
5. Since Independence we have made great progress in the production of agricultural crops. This success in agriculture is called as 'Green Revolution'
- C. 1. Kharif 2. wheat 3. Sugar cane 4. Textile
5. Green
- D. 1. T 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. T
- E. 1. iii 2. v 3. iv 4. i 5. ii
- F. 1. ii 2. ii 3. i 4. iii

Chapter 6: Means of Transport

- A. a) Tunnels means passages dug through hills to make roads or railways.
b) Metro is an underground train system in a large city.
- B. 1. Roadways, Railways, waterways and Airways.
2. An underground train system in a large city is called as Metro.
3. The cheapest means of transport is the water transport.
4. The fastest means of transport is the airways.
5. i) Seaports : Kochi, Kandla and Mumbai.
ii) Airports: Subhash Chandra Bose airport, Chatrapati Shivaji airport and Indira Gandhi airport.
- C. 1. cheapest 2. Delhi 3. Mumbai 4. Shatabdi
5. land
- D. 1. T 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. F
- E. 1. iii 2. ii 3. ii 4. ii

Chapter 7: Means of Communication

- A. a) International Subscriber Dialing
b) Fax is a recent development in the field of Communication. It can send copies of hand written or printed documents.
C) Satellite means an electronic device that is sent into space for a particular purpose.
- B. 1. Sending and receiving message is called

communication.

2. The early man showed gestures and movements to communicate with others.

3. Post offices help us in sending letters, telegrams, parcels and money orders.

4. Telephone is the fastest means of Communication. It is invented by Alexander Graham Bell.

5. Electronic devices sent into space for a particular purpose are known as satellites. Its uses are live telecast of sports and cultural events happening in any corner of the world.

C. 1. Courier 2. Telephone 3. computer 4. Fax 5. Satellites

D. 1. F 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. T

E. 1. iv 2. v 3. i 4. iii 5. ii

F. 1.ii 2.ii 3. ii 4. i

Chapter 8: Our Culture and Heritage

A. a) Most of languages spoken in North India are called the Indo-Aryan language.

b) The art of representation, decoration and creating beauty with paints.

c) Shared beliefs and habits and values of a group.

d) Traditional culture that passes from one generation to another in a social group.

B. 1. Languages spoken in North India are called Indo-Aryan languages but the languages spoken in south India are called the Dravidian languages.
2. Sanskrit and Tamil are the oldest languages of India.

3. Folk dances are performed in the arrival of seasons, sowing harvesting of crops, the birth of a child, a wedding or on festivals.

4. Hindustani music and carnatic music are the two types of Indian classical music.

C. 1. constitution 2. Bengali 3. Carnatic 4. Worship 5. Caves

D. 1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F

E. 1. ii 2. iii 3. i 4. v 5. iv

F. 1. ii 2. i 3. i 4. ii

Chapter 9: Enriching our Thoughts

A. a) A group of persons joined together for a common purpose.

b) A person who reforms or tries to reform.

c) Epic means a very long poem about the life of

great people.

d) The holy month of Muslim calendar is known as Ramzan.

B. 1. Adi Sankaracharya, Dayanand Saraswati and Swami Vivekananda.

2. i) Kind to all living beings.

ii) Live honestly and simply.

iii) Not to tell lies.

3. Zorathustra spread message to the people to do good deeds and to help others.

4. After the Kalinga war Ashoka gave up war and became a follower of Buddha.

C. 1. Hinduism 2. Gautama 3. alms 5. hymns 5. Krishnadeva Raya

D. 1. T 2. F 3.T 4. T

E. 1. Jainism 2. Ashoka 3. Akbar 4. Kabir 5. Quran

F. 1. iii 2. ii 3. iii 4.i

Chapter 10: Our Goals, Rights and Duties

A. a) Democracy is a government of the people by the people and for the people.

b) Socialism means 'equal rights' for all people of the country.

c) A government that provides for the well-being of its citizens completely.

B. 1. Constitution means a set of guidelines and rules according to which a government runs.

2. A Republic is a form of government, which is governed by a president and representatives elected by the people but monarchy means a form of government ruled by a king.

3. Democracy, socialism and secularism.

4. The constitution of India also lays down some guidelines for the government with the aim of developing a welfare state. These are called directive principles of state policy.

C. 1. chairmanship 2. equality 3. exploit 4. Co-operate 5. proper

D. 1. F 2. T 3.T 4. F

E. 1. iii 2. ii 3. i 4. iii

Chapter 11: Our Government

A. a) A party which secures majority seats in elections is known as majority seats.

b) Citizen means a person who enjoys full rights as a member of a country.

B. 1. The Union or Central Government looks after



- the entire country.
- The parliament consists of the President, the Lok Sabha and the Rajya Sabha.
 - The President of India is elected by the member of Lok Sabha, Rajya Sabha and State legislative Assemblies.
 - The majority party leader in Lok Sabha become the Prime Minister of India.
 - The Governor is the main link between the state and the Union Government.

- C. 1. Union 2. Parliament 3. Permanent
4. Councils 5. upper
- D. 1. F 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. T
- E. 1. iii 2. iv 3. v 4. i 5. ii
- F. 1. i 2. iii 3. ii 4. iii

Chapter 12: Our National Symbols

- A. a) Something that visually symbolizes an object, idea, group of quality.
b) A group of feathers that stand up on the top of the bird head is known as crest.
c) Love and Loyal support of one's country.
- B. 1. National Flag - A rectangular tri coloured flag.
National Emblem - Four lions facing the four directions.
National Animal - The Royal Bengal tiger
National Bird - The Peacock
National flower - The Lotus
- Saffron, green and white
 - The National flag should be hoisted from sunrise to sunset only.
 - i) We should not stand in attention.
ii) We must not show respect.
 - The tiger is a symbol of India's wild life wealth. It symbolises strength, grace, power and magnificence.
- C. 1. rectangular 2. horizontal 3. saffron
4. lions 5. peacock
- D. 1. T 2. F 3. F 4. F 5. T
- E. 1. i 2. iii 3. iii 4. ii

General Knowledge

Chapter 1 : Science Sense

a) Our Body

- thigh
- keratin
- throat
- no muscle
- heart
- 45 lts. of water

- brain
- 525
- stirrup
- liver
- enamel
- eye

b) Dangerous Diseases

- Skin Diseases : 2, 9, 12, 15
Air-Borne Diseases : 6, 11, 1, 13
Insect-Borne Diseases : 3, 4, 10, 14
Water and Food Borne Diseases : 5, 7, 8, 16
- V) a) Yes b) No
c) Yes d) No

c) Bright Sparks

- b
- c
- h
- e
- f
- g
- d
- i
- j
- k
- l
- n
- m
- o
- a

d) The Planets

- 63
- Winds
- Neptune
- Mercury
- Saturn
- Uranus
- Mars
- Mars
- Saturn
- Venus
- Jupiter
- Venus

e) Exploring Space

- Yuri Gagarin
- Valentina Tereshkova
- Kalpna Chawla
- Neil Armstrong, 1969
- Rakesh Sharma
- Luna 9 in 1966
- Aryabhata
- The dog Laika in Sputnik II, 3 Nov 1957

f) Scientific Instruments

- i
- l
- k
- j
- a
- c
- e
- b
- h
- g
- f
- d

Chapter 2: The World Window

a) Countries of the World

- China
- India
- Australia
- Sri Lanka
- Canada
- Egypt
- Paris
- Russia

b) Countries and Flags

- Bangladesh
- Pakistan
- Norway
- China
- USA
- South Africa
- Sweden
- Netherland
- Egypt
- Nepal
- Sri Lanka
- India

c) Countries and Currency

- Bangladesh - Taka
- England - Pound
- Japan - Yen
- Mexico - Peso
- Brazil - Real
- South Africa - Rand



d) Countries and Emblems

- 1) k 2) j 3) i 4) h 5) g
6) f 7) e 8) d 9) c 10) b
11) a 12) l

Chapter 3: I Love My India**b) Our States**

- 1) Andhra Pradesh - Hyderabad - Telugu
2) Bihar - Patna - Bihari
3) Gujarat - Gandhi Nagar - Gujarathi
4) Karnataka - Bangalore - Kannada
5) Kerala - Thiruvananthapuram - Malayalam
6) Maharashtra - Mumbai - Marathi
7) Orissa - Bhubaneswar - Oriya
8) Rajasthan - Jaipur - Rajasthani
9) Tamil Nadu - Chennai - Tamil
10) West Bengal - Kolkatta - Bengali
11) Jammu & Kashmir - Jammu - Kashmiri
12) Madhya Pradesh - Bhopal - Hindi

c) Our States and their Nick Names

- 1) c 2) c 3) c 4) c 5) c
6) b 7) b 8) c 9) b 10) b

d) Our Rivers and Cities

- 1) 10 - a 2) 3 - h 3) 2 - i 4) 1 - j 5) 4 - g
6) 5 - f 7) 6 - e 8) 9 - b 9) 8 - c
10) 7 - d

e) Our Greats

- 1) 10, Thar Desert 2) 9, Khargpur
3) 8, Jog falls 4) 7, Jama Masjid
5) 5, Mountain K₂ 6) 4, Bhakra Dam

- 7) 6, Mahatma Gandhi Sethu
8) 3, Qutub Minar 9) 1, Gomateswar
10) 2, Buland Darwaza

f) Our Heritage

- 1) Bidri ware 2) Orissa
3) Karnataka 4) Mithila painting
5) Andhra Pradesh 6) Kalamkari
7) Sculpture 8) Dokra Metal

g) Our Festivals

- 1) Deepavali 2) Onam 3) Id-ul-Fitar
4) Onam 5) Guru Purb
6) Teej, Raksha Bandan
7) Christmas, Gandhi Jayanthi, Krishna Jayanthi
8) Ugadi, Navroj 9) Christmas

h) Sound of Music

- 1) 6 - a 2) 5 - c 3) 3 - f
4) 4 - e 5) 2 - d 6) 1 - b

i) Nick Names

- 1) 2 - c 2) 6 - f 3) 3 - b 4) 7 - h
5) 4 - e 6) 8 - g 7) 5 - d 8) 1 - a

j) Wars in our History

- 3) 1192 AD 5) Second Battle of Panipat
7) 1576 AD 9) Battle of Samugarh
10) 1757 AD 12) Third battle of Panipat

k) Our Social Reformers

- 1) 6 - d 2) 5 - e 3) 4 - f
4) 3 - b 5) 2 - a 6) 1 - c





ANSWERS (CLASS - 5 / SEMESTER - I)

Now Easy English

Unit 1 – Uncle Podger Hangs a Picture

Reading

1. Aunt Maria, Will, Jim, and Tom are the names of the people who helped of uncle Podger.
2. When Uncle Podger would lift up the picture and drop it, it would come out of the frame. He would then try to save the glass and cut himself.
3. When Uncle Podger would hammer a nail inside the wall he would smash his thumb and drop the hammer, with a yell, on somebody's toes. This is why Aunt Maria would want to go to her mother's place.
4. The picture looked crooked and insecure. The wall around it looked as if it had been smoothed down with a rake.
5. Accept all reasonable responses.

Vocabulary

1. Admit; 2. Cautious; 3. Genuine; 4. Damp.

Grammar

1. Silas Mariner's fortune; 2. The cup's handle;
3. The pit's bottom;
4. The desk's price; 5. The gull's sound;
6. Joneses's apartment;
7. The child's laugh; 8. The girl's nightmare.

Activity

Sounds

Bawl; pad; roar; neigh; squeal; hoot.

Movements

Pounce; leap; quiver; slither.

Way of looking

Glare; stare; glance; spy; glimpse.

Unit 2 – The Lantern and the Fan

Reading

1. The wives wanted to visit their old homes because they wanted to visit their families and friends.
2. The condition the father-in-law put to the older wife was to bring back fire wrapped in paper. To the younger wife he said to bring back wind wrapped in paper.
3. The wives could not find a paper that could wrap fire or wind even after asking many wise

men. They felt sad that they would never be able to return home and hence were crying in the forest.

4. A piece of paper appeared and folded itself into a Japanese lantern. The voice then said that a candle was to be placed inside the lantern made of paper. This is how the voice showed how to wrap fire in a paper.

5. A piece of paper appeared which had on it a drawing of a tree and two women. Some long, light twigs flew to the paper. It folded itself, over, under, together. It opened and closed, and it waved itself. It was a fan. This is how the voice showed how to wrap wind in a paper.

6. The two wives had brought home two very priceless gifts. For this the father-in-law believed that his two daughter-in-laws were very precious and that they were the two marvels.

Vocabulary

1. Uniform; 2. Biceps; 3. Triangle; 4. Universe;
5. Tributary.

Grammar

1. was listening; 2. was waiting; 3. was recovering;
4. were planning; 5. have/sitting.

Listening

1. A Constellation is a group of stars visible within a particular region of the night sky.

2. Animals and mythological characters.

3. Constellations can be viewed after sunset and before sunrise. Also, as the earth turns you can see different constellations.

4. Leo, Taurus.

5. They are used to help people find their locations and give directions, just as we use addresses to locate houses.

Unit 3 – Leisure

Reading

1. The poem's name is Leisure. The poet's name is W. H. Davies.

2. The poet is trying to tell us that we are so very busy and caught up in our lives that we do not have time to look at nature which shows us wonderful things, like the woods where squirrels hide their nuts, and beautiful streams that shine



like the night sky full of stars.

3. Accept all reasonable responses.
4. The poet believes that if we have no time to spare and look at nature's beauty and enjoy its gifts, we have lived a poor life i.e. a life without value.

Vocabulary

1. on; 2. down; 3. down; 4. up; 5. on; 6. up.

Grammar

1. angrily; 2. badly; 3. dangerously;
4. impatiently; 5. rudely; 6. quietly; 7. slowly;
8. suddenly; 9. seriously; 10. carefully.

Spelling

1. accepted; 2. pouring; 3. already.

Unit 4 – The Loyal Mongoose

Reading

1. Deva Sharma wanted to buy a pet as he wanted an animal to protect his child and keep company.
2. Deva Sharma's wife did not leave the mongoose with her child as she thought the mongoose would harm her child.
3. When Deva Sharma and his wife left the house one evening a cobra entered the house. The mongoose sensed danger to the child and attacked the cobra. They had a bloody fight. The mongoose succeeded in killing the cobra but was badly injured, too.
4. The Brahmin's wife saw the blood stained mouth of the mongoose, and feared that it had harmed her child: without thinking, she killed the mongoose.
5. Accept all reasonable responses.
6. Accept all reasonable responses.

Vocabulary

1. Hu; 2. Beaver; 3. Gorilla; 4. Guinea pig;
5. Hedgehog; 6. Koala.

Grammar

1. Drives; 2. Work, travel; 3. sleeps; 4. rains;
5. rains; 6. says, comes.

Unit 5 – Inchcape Rock

Reading

1. Accept all reasonable responses.
2. The Inchcape Rock.
3. When the waves of the sea dashed against

the buoy the Inchcape bell would start ringing loudly. The sailors would hear the bell and steer away from the rock.

4. Ralph Rover did not want the sailors to bless the Abbot and so he cut the bell free.
5. Ralph the Rover felt regret. He realized his mistake by playing such a joke.
6. Accept all reasonable responses.

Vocabulary

Adjectives – kitchen, interesting, red, beautiful, important.

Nouns – table, dinner, grammar, subject, book, rug, China, police.

Grammar

1. are; 2. is; 3. are; 4. am; 5. are.

Pronunciation

1. re; 2. dis; 3. re; 4. un; 5. un; 6. un; 7. dis;
8. re; 9. un.

Unit 6 – Androcles and the Lion

Reading

1. A long time ago people back then thought it was okay for one group of people to make other people their servants. They called these people slaves.
2. One day, the master began to treat Androcles very badly. This is why Androcles ran away.
3. Androcles survived by eating wild grapes, seeds from plants and wild berries which grew around him.
4. When Androcles lay starving in the cave he saw a huge lion limping into the cave. The lion was roaring in pain.
5. The lion had a thorn stuck in the ball of his foot. The lion could not move without being in pain.
6. The arena was a place where thousands of people came to watch races and sports. It was also a place where people came to see terrible punishments given to criminals like runaway slaves. Androcles was given the harshest punishment. He was sent into the arena. A hungry lion would be let free inside the arena to kill him.
7. Androcles said the following to the people "I am a man," yet you treated me badly and made me your servant. I helped the lion, and he has become my friend. He treats me better than



what you people have treated me.

8. Accept all reasonable response.

Vocabulary

1. archaeologist; 2. optimist; 3. pessimist;
4. genius; 5. astronomer; 6. gladiator.

Grammar

1. after; 2. before; 3. before that;
4. afterwards; 5. by the time; 6. after that.

Listening

1. swordsman; 2. Roman; 3. wild animals, criminals; 4. slaves 5. Painters, poets

Grammar

Chapter 1 : Countable / Uncountable Nouns

Exercises

- A. **Countable Nouns:** cup, egg, fork, book, spoon, money, balloon, boy, soap
Uncountable Nouns: bread, yogurt, meat, paint, cheese, chocolate, dish
- B. 2. a piece of cheese.
3. a bar of chocolate.
4. a loaf of bread.
5. a pound of meat.
6. a bottle of water.
7. a cup of tea.
- C. 2. slice 3. sheets 4. fork 5. eggs
6. chocolate
- D. 2. bars 3. bottles 4. pieces, bread
5. pound

Chapter 2 : Tag Questions ... isn't he ? / doesn't she ?

Exercises

- A. 2. doesn't he 3. aren't those 4. didn't play
5. were you 6. can
- B. 2. wasn't, she 3. didn't, they
4. are, those 5. can, he
- C. 2. He drinks coffee, doesn't he ?
3. Does that Koala is from Australia ? Does it ?
4. George and Bob can swim, can they ?
5. She is a movie star, does she ?
6. These are your books, aren't they ?
- D. 2. isn't he 3. can they ? 4. isn't she ?
5. do you 6. isn't it ?

Chapter 3 : Comparative and Superlative ... -er / -est?

Exercises

- A. 2. faster than, the fastest
3. easier, the easiest
4. more beautiful, the most beautiful
5. hotter, the hottest
6. longer, the longest
7. larger, the largest
- B. 2. Tina > Sam > Bobby
3. ruler > pencil > eraser
4. Mary > Nora > Cindy
5. Pink hat > red hat > blue hat
- C. 1. bigger 2. the 3. easiest
4. more expensive 5. hottest
6. most beautiful
- D. 2. It is the biggest animal in the zoo.
3. Thomas is happier than cliff.
4. This building is higher than that one.
5. She is the fastest swimmer on her team.
6. December is colder than October.

Chapter 4 : Prepositions ... above/ below / up/ down

Exercises

- A. 1. from 2. between 3. above. 4. into
5. alone
- B. 2. Frank is climbing the ladder.
3. Ken is going into the tunnel.
4. Nora is catching the balloons.
5. Nora is in front of the slide.
- C. 2. near 3. behind 4. beside 5. far
- D. 2. through 3. into 4. up 5. along

Explore Math

Chapter 1 : Exercise 1

- A. 1. Twenty crore fifty-three lakh seventy-one thousand one hundred fifty-nine
2. Two crore seventy-three lakh forty-seven thousand one
3. Fifty two crore sixty-eight lakh eighty-five thousand fifteen
4. Twenty-eight crore sixteen lakh eleven thousand one hundred thirteen
5. Forty-two crore one hundred fifty-three
- B. 1. 7,83,45,287 2. 9,60,816
3. 43,00,54,001 4. 10,16,04,785
5. 1,00,00,001

Exercise 2

- A.** 1. Five hundred sixty-one million six hundred seventy-five thousand eight hundred ninety-one
2. Seven hundred thirty-eight million one hundred ninety thousand three hundred twenty-five
3. Four hundred million three hundred seventy-nine thousand one hundred fifty-six
4. Forty-six million two hundred fifty-six thousand three hundred ninety-two
5. Nine million one hundred seventy-two thousand four hundred fifteen
- B.** 1. 90,550,070 2. 46,223,711
3. 900,000,500 4. 783,576
5. 23,053,557
- C.** 1. 152,345,360 2. 54,398,760
3. 254,007,109 4. 432,479,494
5. 999,999,999
- D.** 2. Fifty crore twenty-three lakh seventy-one thousand one hundred forty
3. Thirty-six crore fifteen thousand two hundred fifteen
4. Five hundred seventy-eight million nine hundred thousand five hundred forty-one
5. One hundred ninety-eight million two hundred thousand four hundred ninety-eight

Exercise 3

- A.** 1. > 2. < 3. > 4. = 5. <
- B.** 1. ascending-23,54,34,971; 43,19,24,197; 63,27,19,149; 71,42,37,149;
descending-71,42,37,149; 63,27,19,149; 43,19,24,197; 23,54,34,971
2. ascending-16,54,24,500; 16,55,24,439; 17,34,28,819; 17,54,37,200;
descending-17,54,37,200; 17,34,28,819; 16,55,24,439; 16,54,24,500
3. ascending-1,15,34,250; 3,45,27,198; 42,25,45,400; 43,25,54,000;
3) descending-43,25,54,000; 42,25,45,400; 3,45,27,198; 1,15,34,250
- C.** Successor-Predecessor
1. Successor 2,15,00,511;
Predecessor 2,15,00,509
2. Successor 15,15,25,401;
Predecessor 15,15,25,399
3. Successor 8,00,00,000;

- Predecessor 7,99,99,998
4. Successor 11,00,00,001;
Predecessor 10,99,99,999
5. Successor 1,23,59,100;
Predecessor 1,23,59,098

Exercise 4

- A.** 1. 468450403 2. 51643508 3. 76642403
4. 37404692 5. 921653347
- B.** 1. 130809510 2. 221282027 3. 315209011
4. 20099643 5. 11003214
- C.** 1. 459661032 2. 59028852
3. 199432788 4. 100001111

Exercise 5

- A.** 1. 124016235 2. 9223006 3. 44699097
4. 8152436 5. 3595725 6. 87192000

Exercise 6

- A.** 1. Q=96 R=27 2. Q=91 R=169
3. Q=1299 R=132 4. Q=1562 R=100
5. Q=346 R=439
- B.** 1. Q=5 R=146 2. Q=3 R=2324
3. Q=29 R=524 4. Q=40 R=134
5. Q=10 R=2973 6. Q=9 R=33645
- C.** 1. 6,52,58,000 2. 36,90,085
3. 41,04,000 4. ₹ 6,97,340 litres
5. 9388 Families 6. 57
7. ₹ 1330425 8. 90 Trucks
9. ₹ 76,38,480 10. 14,92,966

Chapter 2 : Exercise 1

- A.** 1. 24 2. 19 3. 11 4. 21 5. 4
6. 53 7. 0 8. 19 9. 27 10. 18

Exercise 2

- A.** 1. 14 - 10 2. 36 ÷ 6 3. 7 + 9 4. 7 × 5
5. 15 - 7
- B.** 1. 15 + (7 - 5) 2. 120 - 6 × 7
3. 90 ÷ 15 + 5 × 7 4. (18 - 4) + 9 × 3
5. 75 - 6 × 4

Exercise 3

- A.** To be done by students
B. To be done by students
C. 1. 28 2. 14, 14 3. 23

Chapter 3 : Exercise 1

- A.** 1. XL 2. LXXV 3. XC 4. C
5. XXVII
- B.** 1. 36 2. 75 3. 1120 4. 45 5. 2500
- C.** 1. 13 - XIII 2. 750 - DCCL



3. 215 – CCXV 4. 1927 – MCMXXVII
 5. 2760 – MMDCCLX
D. 1. 980 = CMLXXX 2. 1543 = MDXLIII
 3. 1865 = MDCCCLXV 4. 2157 = MMCLVII
 5. 1010 = MX
E. 1. CXX 2. CDV
 3. MMMCDLXXV 4. LX
 5. MCDXV

Chapter 4 : Exercise 1

- A.** 1. 7, 14, 21, 28, 35 2. 12, 24, 36, 48, 60
 3. 15, 30, 45, 60, 75
B. 1. 24, 48, 72 2. 24, 48, 72
 3. 6, 12, 18
C. 1. 16, 32, 48 2. 36, 72, 108

Exercise 2

- A.** 1. 3,14,234 ; 71,250
 2. 51,294 ; 31,428
 3. 1,83,456 ; 78,920
 4. 3,27,400 ; 1,29,505 ; 43,20,195
 5. 94,284
 6. 7,87,608 ; 51,16,024
 7. 4,51,836
B. 2. 29,44,821 4. 1,23,244
C. 3. 6,50,916 5. 9,12,600
D. 1. 9,37,950 2. 1,32,450 3. 47,92,005
E. 1. 21840, 49761, 134571
 2. 73040, 321970, 401050
 3. 24620, 9192, 46420
 4. 2341404, 5670216, 9008760
 5. 234696, 431299, 734030

Exercise 3

- A.** 1. $2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 3 \times 3$
 2. $2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 3 \times 3 \times 3$
 3. $2 \times 2 \times 3 \times 3 \times 3 \times 3$
 4. $2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 67$
 5. $5 \times 5 \times 41$
B. 1. 75 2. 25 3. 12 4. 15 5. 2

Exercise 4

- A.** 1. 14 2. 14 3. 10 4. 32 5. 2 6. 15

Exercise 5

- A.** 1. 432 2. 252 3. 80 4. 16632 5. 252
B. 1. 72 2. 480 3. 330 4. 1352 5. 300
 6. 360

Exercise 6

- A.** 16 **B.** 90
C. 84 **D.** 210
E. 63 **F.** 600
G. Option 3
H. 1. 90 students 2. 6 cm
 3. 7.01 p.m. 4. 72 girls
 5. 20 litres 6. 420

Chapter 5 : Exercise 1

- B.** 1. $3\frac{3}{4}$ 2. $1\frac{5}{7}$ 3. $6\frac{11}{14}$ 4. $9\frac{6}{5}$
 5. $6\frac{1}{4}$
C. 1. $\frac{15}{7}$ 2. $\frac{64}{11}$ 3. $\frac{31}{9}$ 4. $\frac{12}{5}$ 5. $\frac{19}{10}$
D. 1. $\frac{4}{5}$ 2. $\frac{1}{3}$ 3. $\frac{1}{15}$ 4. $2\frac{1}{2}$
E. 1. $1\frac{1}{9}$ 2. $1\frac{27}{77}$ 3. 4 4. $9\frac{19}{28}$ 5. $1\frac{1}{8}$
F. 1. $\frac{11}{25}$ 2. $\frac{1}{2}$ 3. $\frac{5}{9}$ 4. $2\frac{17}{24}$ 5. $\frac{1}{15}$
G. 1. $\frac{1}{13}, \frac{9}{13}, \frac{11}{13}, \frac{12}{13}$ 2. $\frac{24}{36}, \frac{24}{30}, \frac{24}{29}, \frac{24}{25}$
 3. $\frac{1}{2}, \frac{5}{9}, \frac{3}{4}, \frac{5}{6}$ 4. $\frac{2}{8}, \frac{2}{5}, \frac{2}{3}$

Exercise 2

- A.** 1. $9\frac{3}{4}$ 2. $11\frac{2}{3}$ 3. $12\frac{1}{2}$
 4. 8 5. $17\frac{1}{2}$
B. 1. $\frac{10}{21}$ 2. $\frac{4}{81}$ 3. $\frac{10}{77}$ 4. $\frac{2}{5}$ 5. $\frac{7}{12}$
 6. $16\frac{21}{32}$ 7. $10\frac{31}{32}$ 8. $62\frac{1}{2}$ 9. $46\frac{7}{8}$
 10. $9\frac{1}{3}$

Exercise 3

- A.** 1. 1 2. 0 3. $\frac{7}{9}$ 4. $\frac{4}{9}$ 5. 0
 6. $\frac{1}{5} \times \frac{2}{3}$ 7. $\frac{3}{5}$ 8. $\frac{2}{3}, \frac{7}{8}$ 9. 1
 10. $\frac{2}{5}, 4$

- B.** 1. 12 branches
 2. 9 chocolates
 3. a. 45 roses, b. 15 red roses
 4. 16 cups
 5. 3,75,000
 6. 5 students



Exercise 4

A. 1. $\frac{4}{35}$ 2. $\frac{1}{21}$ 3. $\frac{7}{12}$ 4. $\frac{3}{5}$ 5. $\frac{5}{7}$

B. 1. 6 2. 80 3. 6 4. 45 5. 285

C. 1. $1\frac{7}{11}$ 2. $1\frac{13}{18}$ 3. $\frac{35}{64}$ 4. $2\frac{2}{3}$
5. $3\frac{12}{13}$ 6. 3 7. $2\frac{8}{11}$ 8. 2

D. 1. $\frac{7}{9}$ 2. 0 3. 1 4. $\frac{4}{5}$ 5. 1

E. 1. 9 hrs 2. 75 dinosaurs 3. 140 cm

Chapter 6 : Exercise 1

A. 1. $\frac{7}{10}$ 2. $\frac{479}{100}$ 3. $\frac{12431}{1000}$ 4. $\frac{9001}{1000}$ 5. $\frac{1512}{100}$

B. 1. 1.3 2. 0.023 3. 12.03 4. 249.007
5. 0.496

Exercise 2

A. 1. $(2 \times 1) + (5 \times \frac{1}{10}) + (3 \times \frac{1}{100})$
2. $(2 \times 10) + (1 \times 1) + (7 \times \frac{1}{10})$
3. $(4 \times \frac{1}{10}) + (9 \times \frac{1}{100}) + (5 \times \frac{1}{1000})$
4. $(1 \times 10) + (2 \times 1) + (1 \times \frac{1}{10})$

B. 1. $1 + 0.7 + 0.03$
2. $0.3 + 0.03 + 0.004$
3. $200 + 10 + 1 + 0.4 + 0.02$
4. $1 + 0.1 + 0.05 + 0.009$

C. 1. > 2. < 3. > 4. > 5. =

D. 1. 1.97, 2.43, 2.73, 3.15
2. 0.1242, 1.242, 12.42, 124.2
3. 2.0001, 2.001, 2.010, 2.100
4. 327.1, 327.4, 336.43, 343.413

Exercise 3

A. 1. 52.47 2. 30.888 3. 4.652 4. 388.97
5. 1142.473

B. 1. 33.52 2. 11.479 3. 963.53 4. 2.909
5. 3.334

C. 1. 1.58 2. 19.15 3. 26.217 4. 132.855
5. 4.05

D. 1. 1.78 2. 12.2 3. 4.84 4. 200.46
5. 7.362

Exercise 4

A. 1. 25.2 2. 134.9 3. 0.7 4. 719

5. 19434.3 6. 103.5 7. 4980 8. 2718.4
9. 24934

Exercise 5

A. 1. 0.28 2. 0.004 3. 0.18 4. 0.0025
5. 0.07

B. 1. 43.50 2. 24.82 3. 1689.74 4. 1366.82
5. 730.10

C. 1. 2.14 2. 7.13 3. 0 4. 2.91 5. 24.25

Exercise 6

A. 1. 1.55 2. 5.8 3. 0.195 4. 0.143
5. 0.0026

B. 1. 1.49 2. 4.03 3. 1.66 4. 0.07
5. 0.111

Exercise 7

A. 1. 0.3153 2. 0.1793 3. 0.41537
4. 19.734 5. 0.00273 6. 3.2153

Exercise 8

A. 1. 7.5 2. 0.0002 3. 22.31 4. 424.9
5. 2.6 6. 2.43

Exercise 9

A. 1. 0.75 2. 0.555 3. 2.125 4. 7.428
5. 1.4 6. 5.2 7. 2.5 8. 5.25

B. 1. ₹ 2335.50 2. 1.41m 3. 9.8kg 4. 7.5 kg
5. 0.85 kg 6. ₹ 700

Chapter 7 : Exercise 1

A. 1. 760 2. 263000 3. 735900 4. 49630
5. 740000 6. 850000 7. 139940 8. 26100
9. 144700 10. 527000

B. 1. 763.5 2. 19 3. 268.94 4. 99
5. 4.23 6. 17 7. 5.49 8. 7831.2
9. 464 10. 0.438

C. 1,13,00,000

D. 34.8

Chapter 8 : Exercise 1

A. 1. 56 2. 90.6

B. 210km

C. ₹ 2100

D. 141 cm

E. 15



- F. ₹ 380
- G. 74kg
- H. 2247
- I. 123

Exploring Science

Chapter 1 : Flower - Plant's Decoration

- A.** 1. Reproduction is a process through which plants multiply to produce more of their own kind. In plants, reproduction takes place by seeds, spores and vegetative propagation.
2. i. Stamen is the male part of a flower.
 ii. It is made up of filament and anther.
 iii. It is the pollen-producing part of the flower.
 iv. The number of stamens is usually the same as the number of petals.
3. 1. Ovary is one of the parts of pistil.
 2. It is situated at the bottom of the flower.
 3. It has seeds present inside them that turn into fruits.
4. Pollination is the way through which the pollen from the male part of a flower get to the egg in the female part of a flower to form a seed.
- B.** 1. Anther produces and contains pollen.
 2. Filament is fine hair-like stalk that holds the anther.
 3. Style is a tube-like structure that holds up the stigma.
 4. Ovule is the part of the ovary that becomes the seed.
 5. Bats, bees, birds and butterflies are some common pollinators.
- C.** 1. Sensitive 2. water vapour and oxygen
 3. Anther 4. Style 5. nectar
- D. Bats:** Flowers that are white or pale in colour, large and have strong fruit-like fragrance.
Moths: Flowers that are shaped like landing pads. And also strong, sweet and scented night-time blooming flowers muted in colour.
Flies : Stinky flowers which are pale, dull or

drab in colour.

Beetles : Flowers with lots of pollen, dull white or green in colour and mild in odour.

- E.** 1. X 2. ✓ 3. ✓ 4. ✓ 5. X
F. 1. d 2 a 3. c 4. d

Chapter 2 : Seed Germination and Dispersal

- A.** 1.i. The cotyledon or seed leaf, absorbs the food in the endosperm and transports it to the embryo.
 ii. The baby plant is present between the cotyledons.
 iii. It develops a new root system and a shoot system that grows into a new plant.
2. i. Seed dispersal is the process of spreading seeds to different places.
 ii. Seeds need to be dispersed because if they are not dispersed, many germinating seedlings will grow very close to the parent plant.
 iii. This will result in competition between the seedlings and their parent plant.
 iv. The competition is for light, space, water and nutrients which are important for the growth of plant.
 v. Seed dispersal also creates colonies and prevents over-crowding.
3. i. Animals eat fruits and throw away their seeds.
 ii. Seeds of apple, mango, orange etc. are dispersed in this way.
 iii. Some seeds have hooks that stick to the fur of animals and get dispersed. Eg: Cocklebur seed.
 iv. Birds swallow some seeds which come out with their droppings.
 v. Squirrels collect nuts and bury them to be used in winters. These seeds grow into new plants under favourable conditions.
 vi. While eating fruits, some seeds get stuck on the beaks of birds which fall down when birds rub their beaks against the bark of trees.



4. Characteristics of seeds dispersed by wind:

1. Seeds must be light and small so that they may be carried over large distances.
2. Seeds should have hair or wings to help them get carried away by the wind.

Ex: i) Seeds of hiptage, dandelion and cotton have tufts of hair.

ii) Sycamore seeds are winged.

Characteristics of seeds dispersed by water :

1. Seeds must be spongy or hollow or lighter so that they can be carried by flowing waters over long distances.

Ex: i) The lotus fruit has spongy part which helps to float.

ii) Coconut is hollow on the inside and is covered with hairs outside. This makes it light and hence can be carried by flowing water.

5. i. After harvesting, cereals like white and rice are stored in godowns.

ii. This protects them from getting spoilt by moisture or eaten up by rats, birds and insects.

B. 1. Seeds having only one cotyledon are called monocotyledons. **Ex:** Corn, rice and maize seeds.

2. The seed with a small root and small shoot is called seedling.

3. Seed dispersal may be carried by wind , water or animals.

4. Different stages of crop cultivation are -

- a) Ploughing the field
- b) Sowing the seed
- c) Addition of fertilizers
- d) Irrigation
- e) Crop protection
- f) Harvesting and storage

5. Irrigation is the process in which water is supplied to farming field artificially.

6. DDT and Gammexene are some common pesticides used for crop protection.

C. 1. crops 2. radicle 3. seed 4. seed coat

5. Sowing

D. 1. EMBRYO 2. SEEDS 3. RADICLE
4. GROWTH 5. CROP

E. 1. ✓ 2. ✗ 3. ✓ 4. ✗ 5. ✓

F. 1. b 2. d 3. c 4. a

Chapter 3 : Lifestyle of Animals

A. 1. Animals need food to get energy and stay healthy.

2. i) Plant eating animals like cow, goat, sheep, deer are called herbivores.

ii) Animals like bear and dog eat both plants and flesh of animals. They are called Omnivores.

3. i. Insects breathe through air tubes or holes.

ii. There are large number of holes on the bodies of insects through which they breathe.

These are called Spiracles.

iii. These spiracles lead into a network of branching tubes called tracheae.

iv. Because of the contraction of the body muscles, air is pumped into the tubes and then carried out to all tissues.

v. The tissues take in oxygen from the tubes and give out carbondioxide into the tubes.

4. i. Amphibians breathe through gills and lungs.

ii. Tadpoles breath through gills.

iii. But an adult frog breathes through its lungs on land and through its moist skin under water.

5. i. Migration is defined as the movement of animals from one region to another in response to changes in weather, habitat or availability of food.

ii. Animals also migrate because of natural calamities like earth quake, drought or flood.

iii. Some birds also migrate twice a year during spring and autumn. Such birds are called migratory birds.

B. 1. i) Rodents: **Ex:** Squirrel

ii) Carnivores : **Ex:** Tiger

iii) Amphibian : **Ex:** Frog

2. Mammals breathe through lungs.



3. Large number of holes on the bodies of insects through which they breathe are called spiracles.

4. Ostrich and kiwi birds cannot fly.

5. Webbed feet in frog helps to swim.

C. 1. Plant eating 2. breathing 3. gills
4. tracheae 5. resident frogs

D. 1. ✓ 2. ✓ 3. ✗ 4. ✓ 5. ✗

E. 1. c 2. b 3. c 4. d 5. b

F. 1. d 2. e 3. a 4. b 5. c

Chapter 4 : The Nervous System

A. 1. i) The brain is the control centre of the nervous system.

ii) It has three major parts - cerebrum, cerebellum and brain stem.

iii) All these parts work together.

2. Our brain can be kept safe and healthy by adopting the following ways.

i. Eating healthy food that contain potassium and calcium, the two minerals that are important for the nervous system.

ii. Getting a lot of play time (exercise).

iii. Wearing a helmet when we ride our motorcycle or any other two wheeler.

iv. Using our brain by doing challenging activities such as puzzles, reading, making art, etc. that gives a nice work out to our brain.

3. Functions of Skin:

i. The skin is an organ for touching and feeling.

ii. It covers our entire body.

iii. It absorbs sunlight for producing vitamin-D and heat.

iv. It protects our internal organs from germs and dirt.

v. It keeps good things like water and blood inside our body.

vi. It helps us feel heat, pain, pressure and cold since there are millions of nerve endings attached to it.

vii. It regulates our body temperature by controlling blood flow and sweat.

4. i. Tongue helps us to taste things.

ii. The tongue can taste your different flavours: bitter, sour, salty and sweet.

5. Protection of Eyes:

i. Clean your eyes regularly.

ii. Do not read in a moving car or bus.

iii. Do not read in very dim or very bright light.

iv. Do not watch television for long, you must sit atleast six feet away from it.

v. Do not rub your eyes with dirty hands.

B. 1. The actions that happen automatically without our thinking are called reflex actions.

2. The nervous system is made up of the brain, the spinal cord and thousand of nerves.

3. The nerves that carry message from the brain and spinal cord to the muscles and glands are Motor nerves.

4. The nerves that carry signals from the sense organs to the spinal cord to then to the brain are sensory nerves.

C. 1. Pupil 2. motor 3. Cerebrum 4. nervous system 5. Medulla

D. 1. Pupil 2. optic nerve 3. Iris 4. Cerebrum 5. Medulla

E. 1. MEDULLA 2. BRAIN 3. PUPIL 4. IRIS 5. NERVES

F. 1. ✗ 2. ✓ 3. ✓ 4. ✗ 5. ✓

G. 1. d 2. d 3. a

Chapter 5: The Skeletal System

A. i. The place where two bones meet is called joint.

ii. Two types of joints namely movable joint and fixed joint are present in our body.

iii. The joints which allow the movement of bones are called movable joints.

iv. There are four types of movable joints. They are - Hinge joint, gliding joint, ball and socket joint and pivot joint.

v. The joints that are fixed in place and don't move at all are called fixed joints. The bones of skull are joined together with the help of these joints called sutures.

2. Functions of the skeletal system :

- i. Muscles are attached to the bones. Muscles and bones work together to move the parts of the body.
- ii. It provides support and the basic shape to the body. Without a skeleton, the body would be a shapeless heap of tissues.
- iii. Bones contain minerals like calcium and phosphorus that make the bones strong.
- iv. Bones contain bone marrow, a fatty substance which forms blood.
- v. It protects the soft organs of the body. The skull protects the brain. The ribs protect the heart and lungs.

3. i. There are three types of muscle fibres - Smooth muscle fibres, cardiac muscle fibres, skeletal muscle fibres.

ii. **Smooth muscle fibres** : Most involuntary muscles have smooth muscle fibres. These muscles do not have bands. Organs of respiratory and circulatory systems have smooth muscles. The smooth muscles work for long period without getting tired.

iii. **Cardiac muscle fibres**: The heart is made up of cardiac muscle fibres known as myocardium. They have bands running across the muscles. These muscles work quickly and are powerful. They do not get tired.

iv. **Skeletal muscle fibres**: All voluntary muscles attached to the bones are made up of the skeletal muscle fibres which are also called striated muscle fibres. They have dark bands running across the muscles.

4. i. There are four types of movable joints namely - Hinge joint, gliding joint, ball and socket joint and pivot joint.

ii. **Hinge Joint** : Bones move in one direction only because of the hinge joint. Both elbows and knees have hinge joints. Smaller hinge joints are present in fingers and toes.

iii. **Gliding Joint**: This joint is found between the

small bones of wrists and ankles. The movements allowed are simple gliding back and forth and sideways.

iv. **Ball and Socket Joint** : They have one round end of one bone that fits into a small cup - like area of another bone. This joint allows lot of movement in every direction. Our hips and shoulders have ball and socket joints.

v. **Pivot Joint** : It is located between the first and the second vertebrae of the backbone. The skull has been connected to the first two vertebrae of the vertebral column with the help of a pivot joint. It allows the rotational movement from side to side.

5. i. The arms are called fore-limbs.

ii. Each fore-limb has three bones.

iii. The upper arm above the elbow has one bone, called humerus.

iv. The lower arm below the elbow has two bones called radius and ulna.

v. The wrist, the hands and fingers are made up of many small bones.

vi. The hind-limbs or the legs also have three bones each.

vii. Femur is the thigh bone, the longest bone in the body.

viii. The lower leg below the knee has two bones, called tibia and fibula.

B. 1. The last two pairs of ribs attached to the spine at back are called floating ribs as they are not connected to sternum.

2. The bones in the head that protect our brain and give shape to the face is called skull.

3. The framework of bones with each other inside our body is called skeleton.

4. The place where two bones meet is called joint.

5. The strong fibres with which the muscles are attached to bones are called tendons.

C. 1. MUSCLES 2. JOINT 3. SKULL 4. SKELETON
5. SKELETAL



- D.** 1. floating 2. ligament 3. pivot
4. bone marrow 5. eight
- E.** 1. ✓ 2. ✓ 3. ✓ 4. ✗ 5. ✓
- F.** 1. d 2. c 3. b 4. c 5. b

Chapter 6: Food and Health

- A.1.** 1. Food is essential for our body.
2. Food contains essential nutrients which help to keep our bones, hair, nails, teeth and skin strong and healthy.
3. Food makes our immune system strong. It helps us recover quickly when we are ill. It also helps to build and repair cells and tissues of our body.
4. Food helps our body and mind grow. Without food any living thing will die.
5. Delicious food also makes one happy and gives pleasure.
6. Food contains two types of essential nutrients. They are macro-nutrients like carbohydrates, fats, proteins and micro-nutrients like vitamins and minerals.
- 2. Proteins :** Our diet must contain 35% of food rich in proteins. Foods like beans, meat, poultry, fish, cheese, nuts and pulses are rich sources of proteins.
- We need proteins for growth.
 - They build and repair worn out cells of our body.
 - They improve our immune system.
 - They provide energy when carbohydrates are not available.
- 3. Importance of carbohydrates:**
- Carbohydrates are main source of energy.
 - They are easily used by the body.
 - They are needed for the central nervous system, kidneys, brain and muscles for proper working.
 - They are mainly found in starchy foods like grain and potatoes, fruits, milk and yogurt. Sugar and starch are simplest forms of carbohydrates.

Importance of Fats:

- Fats provide taste and stability to food.

- They provide energy for normal growth and development.
 - They help to absorb certain vitamins.
 - They cover the delicate body parts and protect them from injuries.
 - They also keep the body warm.
 - Fats are of three types. Saturated fat is found in meat, butter and cream. Trans fat is found in baked items like biscuits, snack foods and fried foods. Unsaturated fat is found in olive oil, nuts etc.
- 4.
- Vitamins and minerals are needed by our body in small amounts. So, these are called micro-nutrients.
 - Vitamin - A prevents eye problems, promotes healthy immune system and keeps skin healthy.
 - Vitamin -C helps to absorb iron and calcium, aids in wound healing and brain function. Also keeps bones, teeth and gums healthy.
 - Vitamin-D strengthens bones as it helps to absorb calcium.
 - Vitamin - E protects cells from setting damage.
 - Minerals like calcium builds strong teeth and bones, iron carries oxygen to all parts of the body, zinc strengthens immune system and magnesium helps muscles and nerve function, helps body create energy and make proteins.

5.

Communicable diseases	Non Communicable diseases
1. These are spread from one person to another.	1. They do not spread from one person to another.
2. These are caused by germs present in air, food, water, etc.	2. They are caused due to deficiency of vitamins, minerals etc. or due to the malfunctioning of a body part like liver, kidney etc.
3. Ex: Typhoid, chicken pox, AIDS, Malaria, dysentery etc.	3. Ex: Night blindness, Scurvy, Rickets, Anaemia, Goitre etc.



- B.** 1. Roughage are the types of carbohydrates that our body cannot digest.
 2. A diet that contains all the nutrients, roughage and water in the right proportion is called Balanced Diet.
 3. Lack of proteins and carbohydrates over a long period of time causes malnutrition.
 4. Immunity is the ability of the body to fight against disease.
 5. Night blindness and Anaemia are deficiency diseases.
- C.** 1. Vitamins 2. night blindness 3. Vitamin - C
 4. Iodine 5. Anaemia
- D.** 1. NUTRIENTS 2. GERMS 3. VACCINATION
 4. DISEASE 5. VITAMINS
- E.** 1. ✓ 2. ✗ 3. ✓ 4. ✗ 5. ✗
- F.** 1. b 2. a 3. a 4. c

Chapter 7 : Air and Water

- A.** 1. Air is a mixture of gases - 78% of nitrogen, 21% of oxygen, 1% other gases, dust particles and water vapour.

1. Oxygen: It is most important for breathing and for staying alive. It is also essential for burning.

2. Nitrogen: It keeps the process of burning under control. All living things need nitrogen for their growth.

3. Carbondioxide: Air contains 0.03% of carbondioxide. Plants use carbondioxide to make their own food. It absorbs the heat sent to the earth by Sun. This makes the earth atmosphere suitable for life to exist.

4. Ozone: This forms a layer in the atmosphere and is very useful in saving the earth from harmful ultraviolet rays of the Sun.

5. Water Vapour: The amount of water vapour present in the air at a given time is called humidity. When humidity becomes very high, it rains.

2. Properties of Air:

- Air has weight.
- Air occupies space.
- Air exerts pressure.

3. Atmosphere is the blanket of air surrounding the earth. It consists of four main layers. They are - Troposphere, Stratosphere, Ionosphere and

Exosphere.

(i) Troposphere: It is the first layer of atmosphere that extends upto 15km above the earth's surface. This layer is made up of gases we breathe everyday.

(ii) Stratosphere : It extends upto 35km and lies above the troposphere. The ozone layer is situated in the upper part of this layer which prevents harmful ultraviolet rays to enter earth's atmosphere.

(iii) Ionosphere : Above the stratosphere, lies the mesosphere, followed by the thermosphere. The mesosphere and thermosphere are together called as ionosphere. This is the thickest layer which possesses electrically charged particle that help radios work.

(iv) Exosphere : It is the layer of atmosphere above the Ionosphere and is very thin. Beyond this layer, lies the space.

4. 1. Sedimentation is the process through which heavy particles (impurities) present in water settle at the bottom of container due to the effect of gravity.

2. Decantation is the process of separation of mixtures, carefully pouring a solution from a container and leaving sediments at the bottom of the container.

5. Soluble impurities can be removed from the water through evaporation.

Experiment: 1. Take some water in a beaker.

2. Dissolve some sugar in the water.

3. Put the beaker on a spirit lamp.

4. Allow it to boil until the entire water content of the beaker evaporates.

5. After evaporation, some crystals of sugar can be seen lying in the beaker.

6. Thus, sugar is removed from the water through evaporation.

- B.** 1. Water purification is the process of removal of undesirable substances from raw water to make it fit for human consumption.

2. Atmosphere contains 78% of Nitrogen, 21%



of oxygen, 1% other gases, dust particles and water vapour.

3. The substance impurities that gets dissolved in water are called soluble impurities.
 4. Some substances which do not get dissolved in water are called insoluble impurities.
 5. Different methods are followed for water purification. They are boiling, filtration, chemical treatment, ultraviolet purification, reverse osmosis, distillation etc.
- C.** 1. Oxygen 2. Nitrogen 3. Ozone Layer
4. Troposphere 5. Filter Paper 6. Chlorine and Iodine
- D.** 1. X 2. ✓ 3. X 4. X
- E.** 1.(d) 2.(b) 3.(b) 4.(b) 5.(d)
- F.** 1.(e) 2.(d) 3.(b) 4.(c) 5.(a)

Social Studies

Chapter 1 : The Globe

- A.** a. The large land masses are called continents.
- b. The two end points on the axis of rotation of the earth are known as poles.
- c. Grid means a network of straight lines that cross over each other and form a series of squares.
- d. Axis is a straight line about which an object turns or seems to turn.
- B.** 1. A globe depicts the correct shape, size and location of various Continents, Countries, Oceans, Seas and Cities on the earth.
2. The Seven Continents on the earth are Asia, Africa, Australia, Antarctica, Europe, North America and South America.
3. The equator and the lines which run parallel to it are called the Parallels of Latitude.
4. The grid is useful to us to locate place on the globe or on the map.
5. The International Date line is necessary to make correction of dates while crossing the International date line.

- C.** 1. Asia 2. globe 3. Poles 4. Pacific 5. 180th
- D.** 1. F 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. F
- E.** 1. iv 2. iii 3. ii 4. v 5. i
- F.** 1. iv 2. ii 3. iii 4. i 5. i

Chapter 2 : Maps

- A.** a. Symbol is a shape or sign that is used to represent something.
- b. Directions are the points to which anything are moving.
- c. A person who makes maps is called a Cartographer.
- d. Linear Scale is a straight line divided into many parts of equal.
- B.** 1. A map shows the distribution of rainfall, forests, crops, grasslands and minerals of particular place but Atlas is a book of maps.
2. Signs, symbols and colour collectively constitute the language of map.
3. There are four main directions East, West, North and South. North-West, South East are the four Sub-directions.
4. The colour scheme on a map used to show various types of informations.
5. Topographical maps show complete details of places in a small area. **Ex:** Mountains, hills, rivers, roadways and railways.
- C.** 1. Flat 2. South 3. North 4. Information 5. Maps
- D.** 1. T 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. F
- E.** 1. ii 2. i 3.v 4.iii 5.iv
- F.** 1. i 2. iii 3. iii 4. iv 5. ii

Chapter 3 : The Varied Climates

- A.** a. Climate means the condition of a place in regard to temperature and moisture.
- b. Humidity means the amount of moist in the air.
- c. An imaginary line joining points on the earth's surface that are all of equal distance north or south of the equator is known as latitude.
- d. Frigid means very cold.
- B.** 1. Weather changes from day to day and even from hour to hour. The climate is the

average weather condition of a place over a long period of time.

- The temperature decreases with an increase in altitude. The higher we go. The cooler it becomes.
- Torrid Zone, Frigid Zone and Temperate Zone.
- The wind blows from a warm place, it will be hot, if it blows from a cold place, it will be cool. The winds coming from sea are full of moisture and provide us rains.
- The moisture in the air is called humidity. Coastal areas are most humid.

C. 1. hottest 2. meteorology 3. hot 4. cold 5. moderate

D. 1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T

E. 1. iii 2. iv 3. v 4. i 5. ii

F. 1. ii 2. i 3. iii 4. ii 5. i

- G.** 1. Cancer to Capricorn.
2. Tropic of Cancer to Arctic - Temperate Zone.
3. Arctic circle to North - Frigid Zone.
4. Tropic of Capricorn to Antarctic Circle.
5. Antarctic circle to south - Frigid Zone.

Chapter 4 : Congo - The Land of Dense Forests

- A.** a. Hot and humid climates are excellent for the growth of plants. These areas covered with dense forests called Tropical Rainforests.
b. The people who live in Scattered villages are known as Tribe.
c. Pygmies means the original inhabitants of Congo.
d. Cassava is the staple food of the Congo People.
- B.** 1. DRC means Democratic Republic of Congo.
(a) Before 1971 it was known as Belgian Congo.
(b) Between 1971 and 1997 it was known as Zaire and Democratic Republic of Congo.
(c) At present it is known as Democratic Republic of Congo.
2. The climate of DRC is very hot throughout the year.

- Tropical Rain forests are also known as evergreen forests. These are very dense forests with hot humid climates.
- Pygmies are short in height. Their average height is ever less than 1.5 metre.
- The people of Congo live in houses made from tree branches, twigs and leaves. They are Nomadic by nature and live by hunting, trapping animals and gathering food.

C. 1. Tropical 2. Congo 3. Bantu 4. Kinshasa 5. Matadi

D. 1. F 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. F

E. 1. iii 2. iv 3. v 4. i 5. ii

F. 1. c 2. b 3. a 4. a 5. a

Chapter 5 : Ice and Snow Land

- A.** a. Kayaks means a boat used for fishing.
b. Harpoon means a spear attached to a rope thrown by hand or fired from a gun.
c. Iceberg is a floating mass of ice in Sea.
d. Small plants growing on rocks and walls are known as Lichen.

B. 1. Iceberg is the floating mass of ice in the sea.

It is dangerous because a collision with an iceberg may cause a big hazard to a ship.

- Polar bear, reindeer, Arctic fox, musk ox, wolf, seal and dogs.
- The climate of Greenland is always below freezing point.
- Eskimos live in Igloos.
- Eskimos wear the clothes made of the skin and fur of animals.

C. 1. Tundra 2. Greenland 3. Nuuk 4. Igloos 5. Iceberg

D. 1. T 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. F

E. 1. v 2. iii 3. iv 4. i 5. ii

F. 1. d 2. b 3. c 4. b 5. c

Chapter 6 : Saudi Arabia - The Land of Hot Sand

- A.** a. A sand hill is known as dune.
b. The nomads of Saudi Arabia are called as Bedouins.
c. A pool of water found in the deserts is



known as Oasis.

- d. A head covering for men used by Saudi Arabians.
- e. Peninsula is a piece of land jutting out into the sea and surrounded by water on three sides.

- B.**
1. The main deserts situated near the tropic of Cancer and the tropic of Capricorn because these areas are influenced by dry winds, called Trade winds.
 2. The capital of Saudi Arabia is Riyadh.
 3. Hillocks of sand are called sand dunes.
 4. People in Saudi live near oasis because people grow various crops like wheat, barley, tomatoes, melons and dates near these oasis.
 5. Man in Saudi Arabia wear long cotton gown but women wear long robes called 'aba'.

- C.** 1. Sahara 2. Asir 3. Bedouins 4. aba
5. Haj

- D.** 1. F 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. T

- E.** 1. iii 2. v 3. i 4. ii 5. iv

- F.** 1. iii 2. iv 3. iv 4. i 5. i

Chapter 7 : Prairies - The Grassland

- A.**
- a. The grasslands of North America are known as Prairies.
 - b. Beef means meat of a Cow.
 - c. Killing animals for their meat is called as slaughter.
 - d. Homesteads means a farmhouse and the land around it.
- B.**
1. The Mississippi and Missouri rivers flow through the Prairies.
 2. Ranches are open grasslands where people rear cattle in there.
 3. The Prairies are called the 'wheat basket of the world' because farmers produce sufficient wheat for whole country in these Prairies.
 4. Deer, horses, dogs, wolves, rabbits, reptiles, rattle snakes and bull snakes are the wildlife of the Prairies.
 5. Chicago city contains main slaughtering

centre.

- C.** 1. Downs 2. ranches 3. grasses
4. homesteads 5. Chicago

- D.** 1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T

- E.** 1. v 2. iii 3. iv 4. ii 5. i

- F.** 1. ranches 2. Mississippi 3. Prairies
4. Pampas

- G.** 1. d 2. b 3. a 4. c 5. b

Chapter 8 : Conquering Distances

- A.**
- a. An engine operated by steam is known as steam engine.
 - b. Highway means a principal road especially one that connects towns or cities.
 - c. Metro is a railway system in a city that is built either underground or raised.
 - d. Kaccha is a road made of mud and stones.
- B.**
1. Land transport, water transport and Air transport.
 2. The Pan American Highway and the Trans-Canadian Highway.
 3. The Sher Shah Suri built the G.T. Road.
 4. The British Governor-General Lord Dalhousie laid the first railway line in India.
 5. Airways provides the fastest mode of transport over the other means of transport.

- C.** 1. Peshawar 2. Thane 3. Goods
4. Suez 5. Wheel

- D.** 1. F 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. F

- E.** 1. iii 2. v 3. iv 4. i 5. ii

- F.** 1. iv 2. ii 3. ii 4. iii 5. i

Chapter 9 : Sending and Receiving Messages

- A.**
- a. Letters, Telegraph, Fax and Telephones are known as means of communication.
 - b. Internet is the largest network of computers which is used to share the informations.
 - c. Satellite means a body that moves around a planet.
 - d. Documentary is a short film for knowledge and education.
- B.**
1. Communication is the exchange of information or ideas between people.
 2. The early men used animals like horses, pigeons and messengers to communicate

with others.

3. A fax is an instant means of communication.

It is a machine with transmit written or printed messages or photographs over telephone lines.

4. Books, magazines, Newspapers, radio, television, cinema, internet etc., are examples of mass communication.
5. Satellites useful to us mainly for radio, telephone and television services.

- C.** 1. Satellite 2. radio 3. documentary
4. telephone 5. Long

- D.** 1. F 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. T

- E.** 1. iv 2. v 3. i 4. ii 5. iii

- F.** 1. iii 2. ii 3. iii 4. ii 5. ii

Chapter 10 : The World of Growing Knowledge

- A.** a. A Script for the blind is known as Braille.
b. Script is the alphabet of any language that help to communicate.
c. Arabs called the Indian system of numbers 'Hindsa' meaning of India. May this numbers system, called the Hindu-Arabic system.
d. About 4,000 years ago, the ancient Egyptians made paper with the stem a plant called Papyrus.

- B.** 1. Human beings don't express their thoughts if knowledge is communicated only orally.
2. Early human express their thoughts by drawing several pictures in the caves.
3. Pictures or symbols used to represent a word are called 'Hieroglyphics'.
4. In Braille, the letters are printed in same pattern of small dots which are raised from the surface of the paper. The blind person feels it with the touch of his/her fingers.
5. The progress of a country depends on the percentage of literacy in the country.

- C.** 1. Arabs 2. Roman 3. Bible 4. Literacy
5. Braille

- D.** 1. T 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. T

- E.** 1. ii 2. i 3. iv 4. v 5. iii

- F.** 1. iii 2. iii 3. ii 4. iv 5. i

General Knowledge

Chapter 1 : The World of Wild

a) The Wild Animals

- 1) Musk deer 2) Asiatic Lion
3) Clouded Leopard 4) Black Buck
5) Golden langur 6) Asiatic Wild ass
7) Indian one-horned rhinoceros
8) Sloth Bear 9) Great Indian Bustard

b) Please Save Us

- 1) Eider 2) Elephant Seas
3) Red Panda 4) Rhinoceros
5) Flamingo

c) Say 'Yes' or 'No'

- 1) T 2) T 3) F 4) F 5) T
6) T 7) F 8) T 9) T 10) T
11) T 12) T 13) T 14) T 15) T

d) A Way with Birds and Animals

- 1) Albatross 2) Platypus 3) Walrus
4) Zebra 5) Tiger 6) Octopus 7) Shark

Chapter 2 : The Plant World

a) Plant a Word

- 1) Chlorophyll 2) Photosynthesis
3) seeds 4) Rosemary
5) stamen 6) carpel
7) shade 8) stem
9) pulp 10) medicines

b) Flora Facts

- 1) T 2) F 3) F 4) T 5) T
6) T 7) T 8) T 9) T 10) T
11) T 12) T 13) T 14) T 15) T

c) Plant a Name:

- 1) Biology 2) Field 3) Perennials
4) Vineyard 5) Mangrooves 6) Nursery
7) Deforestation 8) Orchard 9) Bonsai
10) Annuals



Chapter 3 : Science Sense

a) Our Body

- | | | |
|-------------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1) Stirrup | 2) Joint | 3) Thigh |
| 4) Enzymes | 5) cerebrum | 6) Vertebra |
| 7) Neurons | 8) Liver | |
| 9) Nervous System | 10) Skeleton | |
| 11) The lower jaw | 12) 33 bones | |

b) Our Heart

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1) F | 2) T | 3) T | 4) T | 5) T |
| 6) T | 7) T | 8) F | 9) T | 10) T |

c) Down with a Disease

- | | |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 1) skin disease | 2) tsetse |
| 3) infected rat | 4) any sensation |
| 5) cataract | 6) jaundice |
| 7) tuberculosis | 8) contagious |
| 9) germs | 10) kidneys |
| 11) ring worm | 12) rabies |
| 13) malaria | 14) vitamin C |

d) They are Different Doctors

- | | |
|------------------|------------------|
| 1) Dermatologist | 2) Pathologist |
| 3) Nephrologist | 4) Orthopaedist |
| 5) Peditrician | 6) Cardiologist |
| 7) Neurologist | 8) Gynaecologist |
| 9) Opthamologist | |

e) Computer World

- | | | |
|--------------|-------------------------|------------|
| 1) CPU | 2) Floppy | 3) Printer |
| 4) ENIAC | 5) Random Access Memory | |
| 6) Lap-top | 7) E-mail | 8) Zip |
| 9) Joy-stick | 10) 5.25 inches | |

Chapter 4 : Language & Literature

a) Same Name, Same Sound

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1) q | 2) p | 3) o | 4) n |
|------|------|------|------|

- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 5) m | 6) l | 7) k | 8) j |
| 9) r | 10) i | 11) h | 12) g |
| 13) f | 14) e | 15) d | 16) c |
| 17) b | 18) a | | |

b) Two sounds pronounced as one

- Rain, grain, brain
- Encyclopaedia
- Daughter, caught
- Day, may, ray, clay
- Zeal, ease, please, meat, mean
- Weight, eight, freight, either
- Diameter, bias
- Grieve, sieve, fiend
- lota, iodine
- Cow

c) World of Words

- | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1) a maiden speech | 2) omni present |
| 3) philonthropist | 4) ommiscient |
| 5) optimist | 6) a sceptic |
| 7) pessimist | 8) obsolete |
| 9) unanimous | 10) unapproachable |
| 11) omnipotent | 12) traitor |
| 13) acutioneer | 14) widower |

d) What is a Word ?

- | | |
|---------------|-------------|
| 1) Rose | 2) Tree |
| 3) Astronaut | 4) Doctor |
| 5) Dictionary | 6) Scissor |
| 7) Cake | 8) Sparrow |
| 9) Medal | 10) Postman |





ANSWERS (CLASS - 5 / SEMESTER - II)

Now Easy English

Unit 1 – Whitewashing the Fence

Reading

- A. 1. False; 2. False; 3. True.
B. Accept all reasonable responses.

Grammar

- a beautiful blue sailing boat
- an old square wooden table.

- Have you answered the question ?
- Jenny locked the door.
- Has Walter called us?
- Have you seen the picture?
- Have your parents got the letter?
- Has it rained a lot?
- How often have you sung the song?
- Has Maureen watched the film?

Unit 2 – Peter Pan

Reading

- One night, Wendy woke to find a strange boy sitting on the floor who was crying. This boy was Peter pan.
- Peter was crying because his shadow was not sticking to him. Wendy helped him by sewing his shadow to the tips of his shoes.
- Captain Hook was afraid of the crocodile because a crocodile had once bitten off and swallowed his hand. This crocodile had liked its taste so much that from that day on he would follow Captain Hook in hope for more.
- Wendy kept the lost boys happy by agreeing to be their mother. Wendy tucked the boys into bed and told them the tale of Cinderella. Wendy took care of the boys, who explored the island during the day. At night, they gathered for meals, played make- believe games, and listened while Wendy told them stories.
- One day, Peter and the children went exploring near the mermaids' lagoon. Suddenly Peter saw the pirates and yelled to everybody to take cover. Peter and Wendy could see that the pirates had tied up Tiger Lily, the Indian princess. The pirates had left her on a rock in the lagoon. Peter was afraid that Tiger Lily would drown when the tide

came in. He had to save her ! In a voice that sounded just like Captain Hook's, he shouted, "Set her free !"

Peter roared, still sounding like Hook. "Aye, aye," the pirates said, and set Tiger Lily free. She swam quickly back to the Indian camp.

6. One night Wendy told the boys a story about children who ran away from their home and flew to Neverland. Even though they loved Neverland very much they never forgot their home. Their parents missed them very much and the children then came back home. This story made Wendy and the others home sick.

7. Tinker bell was Peter Pan's fairy.

8. Peter never wanted to leave neverland as there he would never have to grow up.

9. Accept all reasonable responses.

Vocabulary

- Chemicals; 2. Chemist; 3. Chlorophyll;
- Chameleon; 5. Chorus

Grammar

- Whom 2. Whose 3. Whose 4. Whom
- Whose

Unit 3 – The Legend of the Trojan Horse

Reading

- Troy was located on the coast of Asia, across the sea from the Greek city-state of Sparta.
- People built walls around their city to help protect them. Some walls were only a few feet high. Others as much as twenty feet high. They built gates in the wall. The gates could be opened to let people inside the city. In times of war, the gates could be closed and locked to stop intruders from getting inside.
- The Greeks sent a wooden horse as a gift to the Trojans to announce the end of the war.
- Odysseus decided to send a wooden horse with 30 men inside it as a gift to the Trojans. When it was ready, the Greeks brought the huge wooden horse as close to Troy's city gates as they could get without being shot full of arrows. The Greeks then pretended to sail away. The Greeks were sure the Trojans would want to display the magnificent horse. The 30 Greek men hidden inside the wooden horse climbed out



and opened the gates of Troy and let the Greek army inside. That was the end of Troy.

5. Beware of Greeks bearing gifts! is the old saying. Accept all reasonable responses.

Vocabulary

1. cavern; 2. demolish; 3. pledge; 4. refund.

Grammar

1. since; 2. since; 3. for; 4. since; 5. for;
6. since; 7. since; 8. since;
9. for; 10. since.

Unit 4 – The Two-Headed Weaver

Reading

1. Mantharaka.

2. One day when Mantharaka was weaving the cloth, the wooden frames of his loom broke. He took an axe and went to the forest to bring wood in order to make new frames.

3. The spirit told Mantharaka that the tree was its home and should not be cut as it protects its body from the cool breeze of the sea. The spirit also granted the weaver a boon in return for which the weaver would not chop off the tree.

4. The barber told the weaver to demand a kingdom where the weaver could be king and the barber would be his prime minister. They could have a palace where they would enjoy the pleasures of life.

5. The weaver's wife told him to ask for another pair of arms and another head so that he could work on two pieces of cloth at once, one in front of you, and one behind you. The first piece would help them meet their daily needs. The second one would help them meet special needs.

Vocabulary

Driver – buses, taxis, or personal cars;

Pilot – aeroplane;

Professor – university/school;

Waiter – hotel or restaurant;

Chef – hotel or restaurant;

Pursor – aeroplane;

Captain – ship.

Grammar

As hungry as a wolf;

As bright as a button;

As brittle as glass;

As stubborn as a mule.

Spelling

weaver; boon; women; massage; loom; breeze; lemon; spirit.

Unit 5 – The Solitary Reaper

Reading

1. The poet feels the solitary reaper sings a melancholy song, which can be heard all over the valley.

2. The poet guesses that the themes of the song may revolve around unhappy endings, long ago fought battles, matters of today, sorrow, loss or pain.

Vocabulary

1. Seem; 2. Maize; 3. Knew; 4. hear.

Grammar

1. it's; 2. isn't; 3. what's; 4. there's; 5. can't;

6. couldn't; 7. I've;

8. shouldn't; 9. you'd; 10. he'd; 11. you're;

12. let's; 13. I'm;

14. wouldn't; 15. doesn't 16. he's; 17. haven't.

Unit 6 – The Sands of Dee

Reading

1. Mary goes across the sands of Dee to call the cattle home.

2. Mary's mother

3. Mary never returned home as it rained heavily and covered the entire land and she drowned.

4. Mary's golden hair was spotted in the fishing net and thus Mary's body was found.

5. Accept all reasonable responses.

Vocabulary

1. revolves; 2. hear; 3. wish; 4. travelled.

Grammar

1. peacefully; 2. eagerly; 3. recently; 4. brutally.

Spelling

1. careless; 2. narrate; 3. distance; 4. transfer.

Writing

1. Madame Loisel had entered the ghastly life of abject poverty and hence the servant was removed.

2. Madame Loisel did the entire work of the house.

3. Her husband worked in the evenings and did copying at nights at two pence held penny a page.

4. At the end of ten years, the debt was all paid off, principal and interest together.

5. Poverty

**Unit 7 – The Baker’s Dozen****Reading**

1. Van Amsterdam was a baker by profession and lived in the Dutch colonial town later known as Albany.
2. The name of the famous cookies was Saint Nicholas cookies. They were made of gingerbread, iced in red and white, they looked just like Saint Nicholas as the Dutch know him—tall and thin, with a high, red bishop’s cap, and a long, red bishop’s cloak.
3. The words were said by a woman in a black cloak. They were said as the woman demanded for thirteen cookies when Van Amsterdam was giving her twelve.
4. The baker’s bread rose too high or not at all. His pies were sour or too sweet. His cakes crumbled or were chewy. His cookies were burnt or doughy. His customers realised the difference and he lost all of them to other baker’s. The baker grew poorer and poorer. Since he sold little, he baked little, and his shelves were nearly bare.
5. Van Amsterdam dreamt that he was a boy again, one in a crowd of happy children. And there in the midst of them was Saint Nicholas himself.
The bishop’s white horse stood beside him, its baskets filled with gifts. Nicholas pulled out one gift after another, and handed them to the children. But Van Amsterdam noticed something strange. No matter how many presents Nicholas passed out, there were always more to give. In fact, the more he took from the baskets, the more they seemed to hold.
Then Nicholas handed a gift to Van Amsterdam. It was one of the baker’s own Saint Nicholas cookies! Van Amsterdam looked up to thank him, but it was no longer Saint Nicholas standing there. Smiling down at him was the old woman with the long black shawl.
6. Van Amsterdam thought of giving more to his customers and hence, on the day of the dream he mixed his gingerbread dough and rolled it out. He molded the shapes and baked them. He iced them in red and white to look just like Saint Nicholas. And the cookies were as fine as

any he had made.

7. Traditionally it is believed that a baker’s dozen is 13 instead of 12. This belief is thought to have originated from the story of Van Amsterdam.

Grammar

1. a. We have to buy bananas as there are no oranges in the shop.
b. He ran for the morning assembly because he was late.
2. spending; living; thinking; selling
3. looked; was; could; can’t.

Grammar**Chapter 1 : Helping Verbs ... can / may / should****Exercises**

- A.** 2. May 3. may, may 4. may not
B. 2. may 3. should 4. shouldn’t 5. can
C. 2. you can’t talk on cell phones
3. you can’t yell.
4. you can borrow books in the library.
5. You can use internet in the library.

Chapter 2 : Infinitives ... to + verb**Exercises**

- A.** 1. to buy 2. skate 3. like 4. to wear
5. to agree 6. to be
C. 1. d 2. c 3. b 4. a
D. 2. like to read 3. learn to speak
4. want to buy 5. cooks to love
6. agree to play

Chapter 3 : The Future ... be going to**Exercises**

- A.** 2. yes, he is.
He is going to go swimming
3. No, she isn’t.
She is going to wash the dishes.
4. No, I am not.
I am watching T.V.
5. No, it is not.
It is sunny.
B. 2. is going to eat
3. are going to swim
4. are going to study
C. 2. I’m not going to study.
3. I’m not going to the museum.
4. I’m going to learn to swim.

5. I'm not going to visit my grandparents.
6. I'm going to play video games.

Chapter 4 : The Future ... will

Exercises

- A.** 2. run 3. clean 4. close 5. turn on 6. take
B. 1. will 2. phone 3. it'll 4. will 5. will
C. 1. Will you pass the English exam ?
You won't pass the English exam.
2. Will they get married ?
They willn't ger married.
3. Will it be cloudy and rainy tomorrow ?
It willn't be cloudy and rainy tomorrow.
4. Will they move to Canada in three years ?
They willn't move to Canada in three years.
5. Will take you to school tomorrow ?
Kate willn't take you to school tomorrow.

Explore Math

Chapter 1 : Exercise 1

- A.** 1. 36% 2. 45% 3. 73% 4. 18%
5. 100%
B. To be done by students.

Exercise 2

- A.** 70%
B. 60%
C. 60%
D. 1. 60% 2. 36% 3. 37.5% 4. 35%
5. 287.5% 6. 350% 7. 733.3% 8. 525%

- E.** 1. $\frac{9}{25}$ 2. $\frac{7}{10}$ 3. $\frac{3}{25}$ 4. $1\frac{1}{10}$
5. $\frac{7}{220}$ 6. $\frac{1}{6}$ 7. $\frac{11}{500}$ 8. $\frac{31}{400}$

Exercise 3

- A.** 1. 35% 2. 43.2% 3. 0.8% 4. 1273%
5. 279%
B. 1. 0.1 2. 0.135 3. 0.45 4. 0.076 5. 0.3025

Exercise 4

- A.** 1. 16 2. 9 3. 91.35 4. 3.052 5. 75
B. 1. 2.4 metres 2. 0.225 kg
3. 853.44 km 4. ₹ 68.44
5. 315 kg

Exercise 5

- A.** 1. 25% 2. 77.77% 3. 20% 4. 28%
5. 65%
B. 1. 77.7% 2. 80.5% 3. 71.8% 4. 12%
5a. 75% 5b. 25% 6. 450

Chapter 2 : Exercise 1

- A.** 1. profit ₹ 12 2. profit ₹ 30 3. loss ₹ 2
4. profit ₹ 70 5. loss ₹ 3 6. profit ₹ 30

Exercise 2

- A.** 1. SP = ₹ 3650 2. SP = ₹ 111 3. SP = ₹ 714
4. CP = 450 5. CP = ₹ 1800 6. Profit = ₹ 57

Exercise 3

- A.** 2. Loss = 300, loss% = 4.9%
3. profit = ₹ 5, profit% = 20%
4. Loss = 150, loss% = 6.9%
5. loss = 220, loss% = 5.9%
B. 1. profit = 70, profit% = 10%
2. 15%
3. 20% profit
4. a. profit, b. ₹ 170 c. profit% = 212.5%

Exercise 4

- A.** 1. ₹ 918.75 2. ₹ 637.5 3. ₹ 540
4. ₹ 594 5. ₹ 1380
B. 1. ₹ 7,200 2. ₹ 13,97,760
3. ₹ 8750 4. ₹ 8800

Chapter 3 : Exercise 1

- A.** 1. I = 300, A = 3300 2. I = 800, A = 5800
3. I = 128, A = 3328 4. I = 900, A = 6900
5. I = 1152, A = 5952

- B.** ₹ 400
C. ₹ 4640
D. ₹ 1260
E. ₹ 2242.50
F. ₹ 150
G. ₹ 3296
H. ₹ 69,600

Chapter 4 : Exercise 1

- A.** 1. 100 km/hr 2. 1 m/sec 3. 5 km/hr
B. 1. 140 km 2. 90 km/hr 3. 24.7 hrs
C. 430 km/hr
D. 56 km/hr
E. 48 words per minute

**Exercise 2**

- A.** 1. 19.4 m/s 2. 30 m/s 3. 7.5 m/s
4. 40 m/s 5. 33.3 m/s
- B.** 1. 126 km/hr 2. 288 km/hr 3. 450 km/hr
4. 144 km/hr 5. 28.8 km/hr
- C.** 1. 43.8 m/s, 157.6 km/hr
- D.** 6 hrs
- E.** 4.8 km/hr

Chapter 5 : Exercise 1

- A.** 1. c 2. b 3. a 4. d 5. a
- B.** To be done by students.

Exercise 2

- A.** $\angle AOB$, $\angle AOD$, $\angle BOD$, $\angle AOC$, $\angle AOE$, $\angle COE$,
 $\angle COB$, $\angle EOB$ and $\angle BOA$
- B.** To be done by students.
- C.** 1. $\angle 5$, $\angle 6$, $\angle JVH$ 2. $\angle 2$, $\angle 3$, $\angle DVF$
3. $\angle 1$, $\angle 2$, $\angle RVT$ 4. $\angle 3$, $\angle 4$, $\angle DVF$
5. $\angle 3$, $\angle 4$, $\angle KVM$ 6. $\angle 1$, $\angle 2$, $\angle 3$, $\angle IVF$
- D.** To be done by students.

Exercise 3

- A.** 1. obtuse angle 2. acute angle
3. right angle 4. acute angle
5. reflex angle 6. straight angle
7. reflex angle 8. obtuse angle
- B.** To be done by students.
- C.** 1. $\angle GHK = 73^\circ$ 2. $\angle HJL = 113^\circ$
3. $\angle UST = 30^\circ$ 4. $\angle JGH = 150^\circ$
5. $\angle MKL = 61^\circ$ 6. $\angle EFH = 52^\circ$

Exercise 4

- A.** 1. Acute triangles – 1 and 4
Right triangles – 2 and 5
Obtuse triangles – 3 and 6
- B.** 1. isosceles 2. scalene
3. equilateral 4. isosceles
5. scalene
- C.** 1. equal 2. different 3. one 4. greater
5. base

Exercise 5

- A.** 1. true 2. true 3. false
4. false 5. true
- B.** 1. parallelogram 2. square

3. rhombus 4. trapezium
5. rectangle 6. rhombus

Exercise 6

- A.** To be done by students.
B. To be done by students.

Exercise 7

- A.** 1. 110° 2. 107° 3. 68° 4. 70°
5. 112° 6. 161° 7. 75°
- B.** 1. 14 2. 7 3. 44 4. 20
- C.** 1. 360° 2. 720° 3. 1080° 4. 1440°
5. 180°

Exercise 8

- A.** A, B, E and G
B. 16 congruent triangles

Exercise 9

To be done by students.

Chapter 6: Exercise 1

- A.** 1. 24 cm 2. 15 cm 3. 27 cm
4. 24 cm 5. 12 cm 6. 36dm 7. 140dm
8. 135dm 9. 160dm 10. 186dm
- B.** 1. 18 cm 2. 54 cm 3. 150 cm 4. 25 cm
- C.** 1. 35.6 cm 2. 46 cm 3. 20 cm 4. 80 cm

Exercise 2

- A.** 1. 15 mm^2 2. 60 inches 3. 24 m^2 4. 500 km^2
- B.** 1. 64 cm^2 2. 16 cm^2 3. 30.25 m^2
- C.** To be done by students.
- D.** 1. 351 cm^2 2. 64 cm^2 3. 59 cm^2
4. 62 cm^2 5. 220 mm^2 6. 44 m^2

Exercise 3

To be done by students.

Exercise 4

- A.** 1. 1728 cm^3 2. 64 cm^3
3. 1000 cm^3 4. 421.875 m^3
- B.** 1. 200 cm^3 2. 60 cm^3

Exercise 5

- A.** 1. side \times side \times side
2. length \times breadth \times height
3. 70 ml 4. 2l
5. 450 cm^3





C. 1. Air 2. Paper 3. molecules 4. largest
5. solvent

D. 1. ✗ 2. ✗ 3. ✓ 4. ✓ 5. ✓

E. 1.(b) 2.(a) 3.(b) 4.(b) 5.(b)

F. 1.(e) 2.(d) 3.(b) 4.(a) 5.(c)

Chapter 2 : Rocks, Minerals and Soil

1. 1. Rocks are made up of one or more minerals. The type of rock depends on the quality, quantity and arrangement of minerals in it.

2. According to the methods involved in the formation of rocks, there are three types of rocks.

3. They are igneous rocks, sedimentary rocks and metamorphic rocks.

2. 1. Igneous rocks form the base of all kinds of land-plains, mountains and ocean beds.

2. Igneous rocks are called fire rocks.

3. They are formed either underground or above ground.

4. They are formed underground when the melted rock, called magma, deep within the earth, is trapped in small pockets. As these pockets of magma cool down slowly, this very magma becomes igneous rock.

5. They are formed above ground when lava cools. Volcanoes erupt, causing the magma to rise above the earth's surface. This magma is called lava.

3. 1. Sedimentary rocks are formed by the deposition of material at the earth's surface and within various water bodies.

2. Sedimentation is the collective name for the processes that causes mineral and organic particles to settle and accumulate.

3. Particles that form a sedimentary rock by accumulating are called sediments.

4. 1. Metamorphic rocks are formed when existing rock types are subjected to extreme conditions of temperature and pressure leading to change in physical and chemical condition.

2. The process is called metamorphosis and the type of rock formed in the process is called metamorphic rock.

5. 1. The protection of soil against agents of soil erosion like wind, water and human action is called soil conservation.

2. Some of the common ways of soil conservation are as follows:

(i) Growing grasses and creepers when fields lie bare in between two harvest seasons.

(ii) Encouraging step or terrace farming in hilly areas.

(iii) Afforestation or growing trees over hill slopes.

B. 1. Minerals are of two types. Metallic minerals like iron, copper, tin, bauxite, manganese, etc. Non-metallic minerals like coal and petroleum.

2. Metallic minerals are those minerals which can be melted to obtain new products.

3. Non-metallic minerals are those which do not yield new products on melting.

4. Petroleum is a naturally occurring mineral primarily made up of hydrogen and carbon.

5. Soil is the thin uppermost layer of material on the earth's surface in which plants have their roots.

C. 1. Minerals 2. Magma 3. Sedimentary 4. cotton
5. pumice

D. 1. ✓ 2. ✗ 3. ✓ 4. ✗

E. 1.(d) 2.(d) 3.(d) 4.(a) 5.(b)

Chapter 3 : Simple Machines

1. 1. Machine is a device that helps us to do work very rapidly.

2. A simple machine is a machine that uses a single force.

3. It does not increase or decrease the amount of work but makes it easier through two methods:

(a) amount changing the direction of force.

(b) Increasing the distance and minimizing the amount of force needed.

4. **Ex:** A heavy box is easily loaded on to a truck, if we use a plank.

A steep climb is less tiring if it has steps.

2. There are six types of simple machines: Lever, pulley, inclined plane, screw, wheel and axle and wedge.

1. Lever: Examples: A hammer is a lever when it is used to pull a nail out of a piece of wood. Bottle openers, see-saw, etc. are also levers.

2. Wheel and axle: Examples: Cars, roller

skates, door knobs, gears in watches, clocks and bicycles.

3. Inclined plane: Examples: Ramp, slanted roof, uphill path, slide.

4. Wedge: Examples: Fork, knives, axes and nails.

5. Screw: Examples: Jar lids, light bulbs, clamps, jacks, spiral staircase, etc.

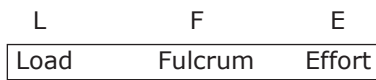
6. Pulley: Examples: Pulleys are used in flag poles, sailboats and cranes.

- 3.** 1. A lever is a board or bar that rests on a turning point.
2. The turning point is called fulcrum.
3. An object that a lever moves is called load.
4. The force that is applied to an object is called effort.
5. The closer the object is to the fulcrum, the easier it is to move.
6. Ex: Hammer is a lever when it is used to pull a nail out of a piece of wood. Bottle openers and see - saw are also levers.

4. Levers are of three kinds.

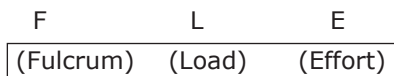
1. First-class lever: When fulcrum is kept between load and effort, it is called first - class lever.

Ex: Scissors, claw hammer, piler, etc.



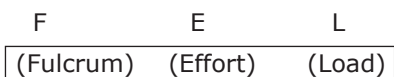
2. Second-class lever: When the load is put between the fulcrum and the effort, it is called second - class lever.

Ex: Wheel barrow, bottle opener, nut cracker, etc.



3. Third-class lever: When effort is put between fulcrum and load, it is called third-class lever.

Ex: Ice tong, fishing rod, forceps, etc.



- 5.** 1. Pulley is made up of a wheel and a rope. The rope fits on the groove of the wheel.
2. One side of the rope is attached to load.

3. When we pull on one side of the pulley, the wheel turns and the load moves.

4. The pulley helps us to move the load up, down or sideways.

5. Pulleys are good for moving heavy objects.

6. It also makes the work of moving heavy loads a lot easier.

7. Ex: The crane uses a pulley to move a heavy ball. Without the use of a pulley, the ball would be hard to move.

8. Pulleys are also used in flag poles, sail boats, etc.

B. 1. The turning point on which a board or bar rests is called fulcrum.

2. Cars and clocks uses wheel and axle as a simple machine.

3. A wedge is a simple machine used to push too objects apart.

4. Jar uses simple machines like screws to hold the lid on its top. When we turn the lid, it moves up or down.

5. When two or more simple machines are joined together, we get a complex machine.

C. 1. single 2. lever 3. third 4. less 5. screw

D. 1. ✗ 2. ✓ 3. ✗ 4. ✗ 5. ✓

E. 1.(c) 2.(b) 3.(b) 4.(b) 5.(a)

F. 1. PULLEY 2. LEVER 3. WEDGE 4. MACHINE
5. FULCRUM

Chapter 4 : Safety and First - Aid

1. If a person gets a minor cut or a deep cut I would help him as follows:

1. I will wash my hands before giving first - aid to an injured person.

2. I will try to remove all the dirt from the wound with the help of small pads of cotton soaked in dettol or savlon.

3. I will cover the wound with the clean cotton dressing to stop the bleeding.

4. I will press on the point where the blood is coming from and keep on pressing it.

2. If someone has a bleeding nose, I will-

1. Make him sit up straight.



2. Lean his head forward.
3. Pinch the soft part of the nose ten minutes.
4. Prepare an ice pack by wrapping crushed ice cubes in a cloth. Apply the ice pack on the patients nose to reduce bleeding.

3. Any break or crack in the bone is called fracture. For such an injured person having fracture, following precautions should be given:

1. Tell the person to keep the injured part still.
2. Support it to stop it moving - use hands, clothes or cushions.
3. If the fracture is in the hand, make a sling using a piece of cloth or bandage. The sling gives support to the arm.
4. If the patient has to be moved, he should be carried on a stretcher.
5. Take the patient to a doctor.

4. 1. If I get a burn, I will cool the burn under running water for atleast ten minutes or I will apply ice cubes over the burnt area.

2. I will apply an antiseptic like Burnol.
3. I will inform an adult about the accident.

5. First -aid to be given in case of snake bite:

1. Tie a bandage just above the bite to stop the follow of blood to the heart and brain.
2. Do not move the victim. Any kind of movement will force the poison to spread faster in the victim's body.
3. Try to get the poison out from the wound as quickly as may be possible.
4. Consult a doctor immediately for anti-venom injections.

B. 1. First - aid is the help given to a person who has been hurt or is suddenly taken ill.

2. Any break or crack in the bone is called fracture.
3. The saliva of animals such as dogs, cats and monkeys contain virues of very dangerous disease called rabies. When these animals bite someone, rabies is caused because the viruses enter the victim's body through the animals salvia.
4. Sometimes, joints such as ankle get twisted and swell up. The tissues around the twisted joint are damaged. This is called sprain.
5. Burnol is an antiseptic ointment.

C. 1.injured 2.bone 3.antiseptic 4.viruses

D. 1. ✓ 2.✓ 3. ✓

E. 1.(d) 2.(a) 3.(d)

F. 1. Accidents 2. Fractures 3. First Aid

Chapter 5 : Solar System

1. 1. Planets are the heavenly bodies that more around the sun.

2. These planets spin on their own axis and at the same time revolve round the sun.

3. Planets do not have their own light. They reflect the sunlight.

4. There are eight planets in our solar system. They are - Mercury, Venus, Earth, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus and Neptune.

2. 1. A star is a large ball of gases.

2. It gives out heat and light.

3. Many patterns of the stars are visible in the sky. These patterns are called constellations.

4. The stars we see in the night sky are part of a huge star cloud called Milky way galaxy which has billions of stars.

3. 1. The sun and the planets along with other heavenly bodies is called Solar System.

2. There are eight planets in our solar system. They are - Mercury, Venus, Earth, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus and Neptune.

4. 1. An asteroid is a large rock in the outer space.

2. They are small in terms of size and do not have enough gravity.

3. The asteroid belt is divided into an inner belt and an outer belt.

4. The asteroids of inner belt are made up of metals and those of outer belt are rich in terms of carbon.

5. 1. Satellites are small heavenly bodies that revolve around planets.

2. Planets like the earth, mars, jupiter, saturn, uranus and neptune have their own natural satellites.

3. The moon is a natural satellite of the earth.

B. 1. Indian names of planets:-

Mercury - Budh

Venus - Shukra

- Earth - Prithvi
- Mars - Mangal
- Jupiter - Brihaspati
- Saturn - Shani
- Uranus - Arun
- Neptune - Varun

2. Mercury is the nearest planet to the Sun.
3. Venus is the hottest and brightest planet.
4. "I" refers to Mars.
5. No. Planets do not have their own light. They reflect the sunlight.

C. 1.Stars 2.Mars 3.Jupiter 4.Saturn

5. Venus

D. 1. X 2.X 3. ✓ 4. ✓ 5. X

E. 1.(a) 2.(a) 3.(d) 4.(d)

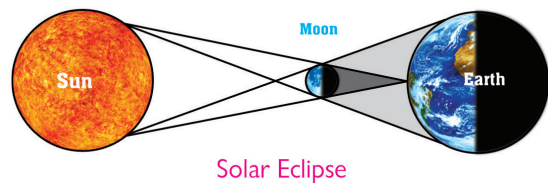
Chapter 6 : Satellites

1.
 1. The moon is much smaller than the sun though it appears to be of the same size as that of the sun.
 2. This is because the moon is closer to the earth than Sun.
 3. The moon is not a light source as it does not have its own light.
 4. The moon reflects the lights coming to it from the sun.
 5. We can see the moon because the light from the sun bounces back towards the earth.
 6. In the absence of sun, the moon would not be visible.
2.
 1. The moon's gravity is one - sixth of the gravity of the earth. So, we cannot stand firmly on its surface.
 2. Only traces of water was discovered on the surface of the moon which is not sufficient and suitable for life to exist on the moon.
 3. The side of the moon facing the sun is extremely hot and the side away from the sun is too cold to support life.
 4. The absence of atmosphere surrounding the moons surface makes us prone to harmful radiation from sun, extreme weather conditons and falling meteors.

5. In the absence of air, no sound can be heard on the moon. It is a lonely and silent place without any animal, plants or water bodies.
6. These conditions make life difficult to exist on the moon.

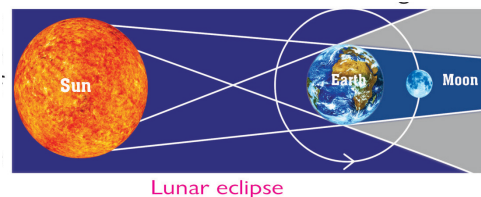
3. Solar eclipse:

1. Solar eclipse occurs when the sun, the moon and the earth come in a straight line.
2. The moon acts as an opaque object.
3. When the sun's rays falls on the moon, it blocks the rays from reaching the earth.
4. A shadow of the moon is formed on the earth.
5. When the earth is completely hidden by the shadow of the moon, it is called total solar eclipse.
6. When the earth is partially hidden by the shadow of the moon, it is called partial solar eclipse.



4. Lunar eclipse:

1. The lunar eclipse occurs when the sun, the earth and the moon come in a straight line.
2. The earth acts as an opaque objects.
3. When the sun's rays fall on the earth, it stops these rays from reaching the moon.
4. A shadow of earth is formed on the moon.
5. When the moon is completely hidden by the shadow of the earth, it is called total lunar eclipse.
6. When the moon is partially hidden by the shadow of the earth, it is called partial lunar eclipse.



5.
 1. A satellite is an object that goes around or orbits a planet.
 2. Natural satellites and hundreds of man-made



satellites also orbit the earth.

3. Many of the planets of our solar system have more than one satellite of varying sizes.

4. The moon is the earth's only natural satellite.

B. 1. The fixed paths around the sun are called orbits.

2. 1. During quarter moons, the gravitational forces of the sun and the moon oppose each other to produce the lowest tides called neap tides.

2. During full and new moons, the gravitational forces of the sun and moon combine to produce the highest tides, called spring tides.

3. When the bright part of the moon is getting bigger, the moon is waxing and when it is getting smaller, the moon is waning.

4. A lunar month is the time the moon takes to pass through a complete cycle of its phases. Its cycle is measured from new moon to complete to new moon. A lunar month is about 29.5 days.

C. 1.Sun and planets 2.east and west 3.27
4.Milk moon

D. 1. ✓ 2. ✗ 3. ✓ 4. ✓

E. 1.(a) 2.(d) 3.(c)

Chapter 7 : Our Environment

- 1.**
1. A green house is a house made of glass.
 2. It has glass walls and a glass roof.
 3. People grow tomatoes, flowers and other plants in them.
 4. A green house is warm inside, even during winters.
 5. The sun's rays pass through the glass and warm up the inside of the house.
 6. The heat is trapped by the glass and does not escape.
 7. So, during day light hours, the air gets warmer and warmer inside a green house and remains warm at night too.

- 2.**
1. Earth's atmosphere acts like a green house.
 2. Gases present in the atmosphere such as carbondioxide acts like a roof of the earth.
 3. During the day, the sun shines through the atmosphere and earth's surface is heated up in

the sunlight.

4. At night, the earth's surface cools and releases the heat back to air.

5. But some of the heat is trapped by the green house gases in the atmosphere. It keeps our earth warm and cozy.

6. It also keeps the temperature moderate thus making the condition suitable for survival of life forms on the earth.

3. 1. Gases that help in causing green house effect are called green house gases.

2. These gases either occur naturally or are produced on the earth due to human or natural activities.

3. Water vapour, carbondioxide, methane, nitrous oxide and ozone are green house gases.

4. These green house gases trap some of the heat in the atmosphere and keeps our earth warm and cozy.

5. They also keep the temperature moderate thus making the condition suitable for survival of life forms on the earth.

4. Green house effect:

1. The earth is wrapped in a blanket called atmosphere which is made up of several layers of gases.

2. The sun is much hotter than the earth and gives out heat that travels through the atmosphere and reaches the earth.

3. The rays of the sun warms the earth and heat from the earth travels back into the atmosphere.

4. The gases in the atmosphere stop some of the heat from escaping into space.

5. These gases are called green house gases and the natural process between the sun, the atmosphere and the earth is called green house effect.

5. Effects of Global Warming:-

1. The planet will become warmer and the weather all over the earth will change. Water cycle pattern will get disturbed, resulting in more rainfall.

2. Water of the seas and oceans expand. Ice melting in the Antarctica and Green Land will

rise threatening the low-lying coastal areas to submerge.

3. Types of crops grown in different parts of the world will be affected.

4. Homes of plants and animals will be affected all over the world. Some special plants and animals may become extinct.

5. Changing climate will have adverse effects on human species living along the coastal areas.

B. 1. Increase in more and more green house gases in the atmosphere leads to rise in temperature of the earth. This is known as global warming.

2. The process of damaging environment is called environmental degradation.

3. Cutting of forest trees on a large scale or the clearance of forest land for different purpose is called deforestation.

C. 1. Ultraviolet and infrared

2. Water vapour and nitrous oxide

3. Ozone 4. Methane

5. Chlorofluorocarbons

D. 1. Ultraviolet 2. Ozone

3. Green House 4. Revolution

5. Methane 6. Carbon

E. 1. X 2. ✓ 3. ✓ 4. ✓ 5. ✓

F. 1.(a) 2.(a) 3.(a) 4.(d) 5.(d)

Chapter 8 : Natural Calamities

1. 1. An earthquake happens when two blocks within the earth suddenly slip past one another.

2. The earth has four major layers: Inner core, outer core, mantle and crust.

3. The crust and top of the mantle make up a thin layer on the surface of our planet.

4. But this layer is not one piece. It is made up of many pieces.

5. These pieces keep moving around slowly, sliding past one another and bumping into one another on some occasions.

6. These pieces are called tectonic plates and the edges of plates are called plate boundaries.

7. The plate boundaries are made up of many faults and most of the earthquakes around the world occur on these faults.

8. Since the edges of the plates are rough, they get stuck while the rest of the plates keep moving.

9. Finally, when the plate tends to move far enough, the edges dissociate on one of the faults and there is an earthquake.

2. Effects of Earthquake:

1. An earthquake sends shock waves that are strong enough for altering the surface of the earth, thrusting up cliffs and opening deep gorges in the ground.

2. Causes great damage like the collapse of buildings and other man - made structures.

3. Causes the break down of power and gas lines thus causing fire.

4. Causes land slides, snow avalanches, tsunamis and volcanic eruptions.

3. Safety procedures during the course of an earth quake:

1. Do not try to run out of the building when you are inside your house.

2. Get under a bed or table. Cover your head and face with the help of a pillow, newspaper, blanket, etc., to protect yourself from falling debris.

3. Never use the elevator during the course of an earthquake because electricity supply may be cut off leaving you stuck up in the elevator.

4. Stay at a place till the earthquake stops, if you are outdoors. Do not stay near walls, buildings, lamp posts, power poles, etc.

4. Types of Volcanoes: There are two different types of volcano - active volcano and extinct volcano.

1. Active volcano: It is a volcano that has at least one eruption during the past 10,000 years. An active volcano could be erupting or dormant.

(a) Erupting Volcano:- It is an active volcano that is having an eruption. Ex: Etna of the Mediterranean Sea.

(b) Dormant Volcano :- It is an active volcano that is not erupting but is supposed to erupt again.

Ex: Fujiyama in Japan.

2. Extinct Volcano: Volcano that has not erupted for atleast 10,000 years and is not expected to erupt again in a comparable time scale of the future.

Ex: Popa in Myanmar and Mt. Kneya.

5. Causes of Tsunami:

1. The drop down and upthrust of the earth's crust result in earthquake. The vast majority of tsunamis occur due to earthquakes.

2. A large -scale under sea landslide also triggers tsunami.



3. Under sea volcanic eruption of a certain degree also results in a tsunami.

6. Causes of flood:

1. Heavy rainfall.
2. Heavy snow melting.
3. High tides, storms, cyclones, etc. in coastal areas.
4. Deforestation.

B. 1. Hypocenter:- The location below the earth's surface where the earthquake starts is called hypocenter.

2. Extinct Volcano:- Volcano that has not erupted for atleast 10,000 years and is not expected to erupt again in a comparable time scale of the future.

Ex: Popa in Myanmar and Mt. Kenya.

3. Epicenter:- The location directly above the hypocenter on the surface of the earth is called epicenter.

4. Lava:- The liquid rocks and gases that flow out of a volcano are jointly called lava.

5. Tectonic Plates:- The crust and top of the mantle make up a thin layer on the surface of our planet. This layer is made up of many pieces that keep moving around slowly, sliding past one another and bumping into one another on some occasions. These pieces are called tectonic plates.

6. Volcano:- A volcano is a land form(usually a mountain) where molten rock erupts through the surface of the earth.

- C.**
1. Extinct
 2. Cracks
 3. Epicenter
 4. Richter scale
 5. Natural

- D.**
- | | |
|------------|----------------|
| 1. Tsunami | 2. Epicenter |
| 3. Volcano | 4. Seismograph |
| 5. Dormant | |

- E.** 1. ✓ 2. ✓ 3. ✓ 4. ✗ 5. ✗ 6. ✓ 7. ✗

- F.** 1.(b) 2.(a) 3.(a)

Social Studies

Chapter 1 : Living Longer and Healthier lives

- A.**
- a. An instrument which is used to measure the temperature of human body is known as Thermometer.
 - b. Surgery is a treatment of disease by removing or cutting parts of the body.

c. Preventing infection especially by the elimination of growth of microorganism is known as Antiseptic.

d. Vaccine prevents diseases from occurring.

- B.**
1. Thermometer is used to measure body temperature.
 2. Stethoscope is an instrument used to examine the condition of the patient's heart and lungs.
 3. The vaccine for small pox has been removed from the world.
 4. Milk or water can be boiled to kill germs and prevent diseases. The process of killing germs by boiling followed by rapid cooling, especially in milk, is called pasteurisation.
 5. The rapid growth of population is known as population explosion.

- C.** 1. Fahrenheit 2. Galileo 3. X-ray 4. 98.4°F
5. Edward Jenner

- D.** 1. F 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. F

- E.** 1. iv 2. v 3. i 4. ii 5. iii

- F.** 1. b 2. c 3. a 4. b 5. d

Chapter 2 : The Age of Machines

- A.**
- a. Locomotive is a machine that moves trains on railway tracks.
 - b. Invention of new machines was known as Machine age.
 - c. Make a deep hole in the ground in search of oil or water is known as drill.
 - d. Producing goods in bulk with the help of the machines is called mass-production.
- B.**
1. The first metal to be discovered was copper. The benefit of this discovery made man a skilled hunter, farmer, carpenter, potter and iron smith.
 2. The invention of steam engine led to the invention of other machines at that time.



3. Industrial revolution was a great change in quantity and quality of goods produced by big factories.
4. The force of flowing river water is used to generate electricity. This is called hydroelectricity.
5. Renewable and non-renewable sources are known as alternative sources of energy.

C. 1. Iron 2. copper 3. stones 4. steam
5. alternative

D. 1. T 2. F 3. F 4. F 5. F

E. 1. iii 2. v 3. iv 4. i 5. ii

F. 1. d 2. b 3. b 4. c 5. a

Chapter 3 : People Who Never Die

- A.**
- a. Philosopher means a person who loves and seeks truth and wisdom.
 - b. A person who is owned by another person and can be sold by that person is known as a slave.
 - c. A woman who belongs to the christian religious order is called as a Nun.
 - d. Money or help given out of kindness to the poor and needy is known as charity.
- B.**
1. The teachings of Socrates were the people not to believe in superstitions and to find truth behind every happening.
 2. We remember Abraham Lincoln because when he was the president of United States, he won the civil war and abolished slavery.
 3. The ideas of Karl Marx were
 - i) The workers to be united and to fight the capitalists for their rights.
 - ii) The profits of the industries should not remain in the hands of few.
 4. Gandhiji came to India in 1915 from South Africa. He was shocked to see the condition of the Indians in their own country. They were living under the British rule.
 5. Mother Teresa established institutions like 'Missionaries of Charity' and 'Nirmal Hriday Home' for the poor.

C. 1. Greece 2. President 3. Factory

4. Satyagraha 5. Kolkata

D. 1. F 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. T

E. 1. iv 2. v 3. ii 4. iii 5. i

F. 1. c 2. b 3. a 4. d 5. d

G. Across:- 1. Mother Teresa 2. Kolkata

3. Lincoln 5. Gandhi

Down :- 2. King 4. Satyagraha

Chapter 4 : The Birth of the United Nations

- A.**
- a. Countries became jealous of each other and started fighting among themselves is known as world war.
 - b. The most powerful bomb ever used in warfare is called as atom bomb.
 - c. Rights held to be justifiably belonging to any person are known as human rights.
- B.**
1. The industrial revolution and jealous of countries led to the world wars.
 2. The united nations came into existence after the second world war to stop wars in the future.
 3. The major objectives of the United Nations are:
 - 1) To maintain international peace and security.
 - 2) To promote friendly relations and co-operation among the Nations.
 4. The UN flag is blue with the UN emblem on it in white. There are two olive branches embracing the globe in the emblem.
 5. The head quarters of the UN is open to public everyday of the year except 25th December and 1st January.
- C.** 1. Industrial 2. USA 3. 24th October 4. 200
5. 10th December
- D.** 1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. F
- E.** 1. iii 2. v 3. iv 4. i 5. ii
- F.** 1. d 2. b 3. c 4. b 5. d

Chapter 5 : How the United Nations Works

- A.**
- a. Forbidding an idea or plan to be put into action is known as Veto.



- b. The Secretary General is the most powerful official who takes care of the daily operations of the UN.
- c. Trust Territories were the regions of the world that were not independent and were controlled by independent nations that were UN members.
- d. UNICEF is an organisation which works for children's welfare.

- B.**
1. The General Assembly, The Security Council, The Economic and Social Council, The secretariat, The International court of Justice and The Trusteeship Council.
 2. United States of America, United Kingdom, France, Russia and China are the permanent members of the security council.
 3. The Secretary General is the most powerful official of the UN. He plays a major role in setting the organisations agenda in international security affairs.
 4. The WHO aims at fighting diseases and improving the health services. It is trying to stop the spread of fatal diseases.
 5. The major achievements of the United Nations.
 - i) The UN has prevented the occurrence of the third world war.
 - ii) The UN has succeeded in checking the spread and use of nuclear and other weapons.

- C.** 1. Financial 2. one 3. Permanent 4. 15
5. UNICEF

- D.** 1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. T

- E.** 1. iii 2. v 3. i 4. ii 5. iv

- F.**
1. United Nations International Children's Emergency Fund.
 2. United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation
 3. World Health Organisation
 4. The Economic and Social Council
 5. International Monetary Fund
 6. The International Telecommunication Union

- G.** 1. c 2. b 3. c 4. c 5. a

Chapter 6 : India and the United Nations

- A.**
- a. Apartheid means discrimination between the dark skinned and fair skinned people.
 - b. Non-alignment means not a part of major alliance of the power blocks.
 - c. Political support given to one country or group by another is known as Alignment.
 - d. The basic principles of NAM is known as Panchsheel.

- B.**
1. Mrs. Vijaya Lakshmi Pandit was the first woman president of the UN General Assembly in 1951.
 2. Soviet Union and the USA were the super powers of the world after the World War-II.
 3. NAM was formed because smaller nations started aligning with one group or other.
 4. Marshal Tito, Dr. Sukarno and G.A. Naseer were the founders of the Non- Aligned movement.
 5. India supported U.N. in Iran-Iraq border issue,
Palestinian freedom and apartheid in South Africa.

- C.** 1. Apartheid 2. brain- child 3. Belgrade
4. Egypt 5. Movement

- D.** 1. F 2. F 3. F 4. F 5. T

- E.** 1. iii 2. v 3. i 4. ii 5. iv

- F.** 1. b 2. a 3. a 4. c 5. a

Chapter 7 :

The British Rule and the Revolt of 1857

- A.**
- a. Explorer means somebody who travels to places that are previously unknown.
 - b. Revolt means state of rebelling.
 - c. East India Company was formed by British merchants.
 - d. Rule Under which a ruler would lose his kingdom if he has not his own son to succeed the throne. This is called as doctrine of lapse.
- B.**
1. The Europeans came to India to trade.
 2. Bahadur Shah Zafar was the Mughal Emperor.
 3. The Indian weavers were unhappy with the British because they could not compete with

the prices of the British mill made clothes. Millions of weavers lost their jobs in the process.

4. The Revolt of 1857 failed because the rebels were no match for the British, who had superior weapons. The Indian sepoy's bought with outdated weapons.
5. The Revolt of 1857 marked the end of the East India Company's rule in India.

C. 1. Portuguese 2. Buxar 3. Avadh 4. Sepoy's
5. Bahadur Shah - II

D. 1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. F

E. 1. iii 2. v 3. iv 4. i 5. ii

F. 1. iv 2. ii 3. iii 4. i 5. iv

Chapter 8 : The Struggle for Independence

A. a. Social means concerned with human beings in their relations to each other.

b. Swadeshi means 'Own Country'.

c. Patriotism is a love and loyal support of one's Country.

d. The custom of having more than one wife at the same time is known as polygamy.

B. 1. According to the social reformers because of social evils like caste system, killing of female babies, sati, child marriage and polygamy, India was divided and backward.

2. Indian National Congress was founded by A.O. Home.

3. Extremist leaders did not like such a 'soft' approach like moderates. They preferred a stronger and more active opposition to the British, with the active support of the people.

4. Lal, Bal, Pal means Lala Lajpat Rai, Bal Gangadhar Tilak and Bipin Chandra Pal.

5. The revolutionaries not accepted by the common masses because it resorted to violent means of protest.

C. 1. Scholars 2. Birth Right 3. Opinion
4. Bonfire 5. Moderate

D. 1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. F

E. 1. iv 2. iii 3. v 4. i 5. ii

F. 1. a 2. b 3. d 4. a 5. c

Chapter 9 : Gandhiji leads the Nation

A. a. A formal decision is known as resolution.

b. Authoring means control over one's own affairs.

c. Heroic means having a lot of courage.

d. The inner feeling distinguishing between right and wrong is known as conscience.

B. 1. Gandhiji called off the Non-Cooperation movement because of the Chauri Chaura incident in their Uttar Pradesh.

2. The reason behind the civil disobedience movement was the British had introduced a tax on salt production.

3. In 1915, Gandhiji returned to India from South Africa. Non-violence method of Gandhiji made him famous among Indians.

4. Jallianwala Bagh Massacre occurred on 13th April 1919 at Jallianwala Bagh in Amritsar. General Dyer was the leader of the British soldiers in this massacre.

5. Indian National Army formed by Subhash Chandra Bose. 'Jai Hind' and 'Delhi Chalo' were famous slogans of Subhash Chandra Bose.

C. 1. Caste 2. Satyagraha 3. Simon
4. Dandi March 5. 1935

D. 1. F 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. T

E. 1. v 2. iv 3. i 4. iii 5. ii

F. 1. iii 2. iv 3. iii 4. ii 5. iv

Chapter 10 : Natural Disaster

A. a. An event that causes great damage to human life and property is known as disaster.

b. Cyclone means very strong wind accompanied with heavy rain.

c. Epidemic is a large scale outbreak by disease.

d. A situation where shortage of food causes large scale deaths of humans and animals is called as 'famine'.

B. 1. A disaster is a severe accident causing great damage to life and property.

2. Earthquakes occur due to the violent and sudden shaking of the earth. It is caused by



- movements deep inside the earth.
- Floods occur due to heavy rains for days together and it also occur due to dam failure.
 - Save water as much as possible
 - Grow more trees
 - By building dams
 - Red Cross society and World Health Organisation.

C. 1. Calamity 2. drought 3. Seismology
4. rain 5. flooding, coastal

D. 1. F 2. F 3. F 4. F 5. T

E. 1. d 2. e 3. a 4. b 5. c

F. 1. b 2. d 3. d 4. a 5. d

General Knowledge

Chapter 1 : Our Surroundings

a) Air and Atmosphere

- Air
- 1 kg/cm²
- water
- gases
- outer space
- nitrogen
- 21%
- Ozone layer, sun

c) The Earth

- 510,000,000 sq.km
- 12,713 km
- 8,848m Mount Everest
- 40,007 km
- one rotation in 23 hr.56min. 4.09sec.
- 1,49,598,500 km
- 380,000 km
- Europe : 39, Asia : 41, Africa : 52,
North America : 17, South Africa : 13,
Australia : 3

Chapter 2 : I Love My India

a) Our States

- Karnataka - Bangalore - Kannada
- Kerala - Thiruvananthapuram - Malayalam
- Manipur - Imphal - Manipuri
- Orissa - Bhubaneswar - Oriya
- Maharashtra - Mumbai - Marathi
- Andhra Pradesh - Hyderabad - Telugu

- Nagaland - Kohima - English
- Uttar Pradesh - Lucknow - Hindi

b) Our Rulers and Reformers

- Shivaji
- Ashoka
- Swami Vivekananda
- Samudra Gupta
- Raja Ram Mohan Roy
- Harsha Vardhana
- Akbar
- Babur

c) Our Empires and Dynasties

- Indus Valley Civilization
- Aryan Civilization
- Mouryan Empire
- Satavahana Empire
- Gupta Empire
- Sangam Age
- Pallavas
- Cholas
- Rajputs
- Mughal Empire

d) Our Holy Books

- 4
- 700
- 18
- 24,000
- 20,000
- 66
- 114
- Avesta
- Arjuna
- 8
- 8

e) Our Defence Officers

- Vice Admiral
- Air Vice Marshal
- Brigadier
- Captian
- Wing Commander
- Major
- Lieutenant
- Flying officer
- Second Lieutenant

Chapter 3 : Be Sportive

a) Sports Terms

- Archery
- Badminton
- Badminton
- Basket Ball
- Basket Ball
- Billiards
- Boxing
- Chess
- Cricket
- Foot ball
- Golf
- Hockey
- Hockey
- Horce racing
- Swimming

b) Cups and Trophies

- Hockey
- Yact racing
- Weight lifting
- Foot ball
- Lawn Tennis
- Horse racing
- Cricket
- Foot ball
- Polo
- Cricket



- 11) Table Tennis(Women)
- 12) Hockey (Women)
- 13) Cricket 14) Cricket
- 15) Cricket

c) Icons

- 1) Swimming 2) Skiing
- 3) Archery 4) Shooting
- 5) Lawn Tennis 6) Cycling
- 7) Athletics 8) Weight Lifting
- 9) Skating

d) India's Twenty - 20

- 1)Mahendra Singh Dhoni 2) Virendra Shewag
- 3) Yuvaraj Singh, Suresh Raina 4) M.S. Dhoni
- 5)Harbhajan Singh 6) M.S. Dhoni
- 7) Australia

Chapter 3 : World Window

a) Seven Wonders of the Ancient World

- 1)Egypt 2) Greece 3) Iraq 4) Greece

- 5)Turkey 6) Egypt 7) Turkey

b) Let's Name them

- 2)Cruzeiro Real 3) Santiago
- 4)Denmark 5) Jerusalem
- 6)Dinar 7) Kenya
- 8)Kuwait City 9) Ringgit
- 10)Mexico 11) Amsterdam
- 12)Krone 13) Peru
- 14)Lisbon 15) Riyal

c) Across the World

- Down :
- 1) Ethiopia 2) Panama
- 6)Burma 8) Africa 9) Iraq
- 10)Honshu
- Across:
- 1) East Pakistan 3) Australia
- 4)Blanc 5) Kashmir 6) Berne
- 8)Kazakhstan

